



# KOREAN

A COMPLETE COURSE  
FOR BEGINNERS

written by

Jaemin Roh

edited by

Suzanne McQuade

and

Sungwon Yim

LIVING LANGUAGE® 

# Course Outline

List of Abbreviations ix

Introduction x

Korean Alphabet, Pronunciation, and Hangeul xii

The Korean Alphabet xiii

Pronunciation xiii

How Hangeul Works xvi

Hangeul Practice xvii

## VOCABULARY

## GRAMMAR

### LESSON 1 HOW ARE YOU?

1

Saying Hello and Good-bye

Honorifics

Present Tense

Topic Particle

Word Order

### LESSON 2 WHERE IS THE MOVIE THEATER?

13

Saying "Thank You" and "You're Welcome"

Subject Particles

"Where Is..." Expressions

Location Particles -에 and -에서

### LESSON 3 HOW MUCH IS IT?

25

Clothes Shopping Expressions

Demonstrative Indexes 이, 그, 저

Object Particles

Numbers 1-10 and Noun Counters

있어요 = There Is/There Are ...

### LESSON 4 EUNJI'S DAY

39

Daily Activities

Expressing "And": N하고 N; S고 S

Postposition -도

VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR
	Telling Time Asking Time Questions Days of the Week and Months of the Year From/To: -부터/-까지 or -에서/-까지
<b>LESSON 5 AT SCHOOL</b>	53
School Subjects	Non-polite Expressions Non-polite Question Ending -니 Non-polite Background Ending -야 Polite Question Ending -세요 Pronouns Expressing "Have To"
<b>LESSON 6 PLEASE SEND ME AN E-MAIL!</b>	67
Computer Terms	Future Tense 1: First Person Intentional Future Tense -르게요/을게요 Future Tense 2: Conjecture -겠 Negations Possessive Pronouns
<b>LESSON 7 A NEW EMPLOYEE</b>	79
Describing Personal Appearance	Past Tense Indirect Objects Making Requests: -어 주세요/ -아 주세요 Modification of the Verb Root 하다 (To Do) Dependent Noun -분

VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR
<b>LESSON 8 HELLO, IS THIS THE HOSPITAL?</b>	93
Phone-Related Expressions	Counting Numbers Beyond 10 I Like To ... -고 싶은 데요
<b>LESSON 9 TAKE THIS MEDICINE EVERY SIX HOURS.</b>	105
Describing Symptoms and Body Parts	The Korean Gerund Every: -마다 and 매- Past Perfect Form -더니 Positive and Negative Commands: -세요 and -지 마세요
<b>LESSON 10 AT THE BANK</b>	117
Banking and Errands Expressions	More Past Tense Constructions Expressions of Intention Postposition -만 Expressing Continuous Action with -서
<b>LESSON 11 EUNJI'S BROTHER'S HOUSE</b>	129
Rooms and Household Items	Sentence Ending with Comment -네/-네요 Successive Action -면서 It Seems That ... -ㄴ/은 것 같다 and -는 것 같다 Compound Verbs with -하다
<b>LESSON 12 GRANDMOTHER'S BIRTHDAY</b>	141
Family Terms	Present Tense Formation and the Progressive -고 있-

Question Endings -니? and  
-ㅂ/습니까?

Non-polite Suggestive -자 and  
Polite Suggestive -ㅂ시다

More Korean Postpositions and  
Verb Endings

**LESSON 13 A TRIP TO JEJU ISLAND**

153

Travel Expressions and Terms

Expressing Ability: -ㄹ/을 수 있다

To Become: -어/아

The Future Gradual: Expressing  
"Will Become"

Expressing Attempt: -어/아

Dates

**LESSON 14 ONE BIBIMBAP, PLEASE!**

167

Food Terms

Adjectives, Comparatives, and  
SuperlativesBecause/Since: -(으)니 or  
-(으)니까

(I) Should . . . : -어/아/야 겠다

Although: -지만

**LESSON 15 I'M A RED DEVILS FAN TOO!**

181

Sports Terms and Colors

Tag Question: Confirming -지요

For/Because: Causal Expression  
-아/어서

Reported Speech -대요/-ㄴ 대요

To Like: 좋아하다

**LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS**

n.	noun
adj.	adjective
pron.	pronoun
infml.	informal
fml.	formal
hon.	honorific
subj. part.	subject particle
dir. part.	direction particle
post.	postposition
loc. part.	location particle



## INTRODUCTION

So you've decided to learn Korean. Congratulations! Learning a new language is one of the best and most rewarding decisions you can make in your lifetime. It opens up a door to a whole new world and a window into the minds of the people in that world. There is no better way to understand a nation and communicate with its people than by studying their literature and culture in their native language. At the same time, learning any new language is also a major commitment. It takes time, practice, and a great deal of patience. You learned your native language during the first seven years of your life through constant exposure to and use of the language. You shouldn't expect to learn a new language fluently in any time shorter than that. However, you can learn the basics of a language, understand everyday conversations, and make yourself understood to a fair degree in a couple of years with consistent practice and the right kind of input. This course is designed to help you take that initial step toward mastering Korean. This course covers most major Korean grammatical concepts and basic vocabulary used in everyday situations. It should give you the head start you need to become a proficient speaker of Korean.

### How to Use This Course

This beginner-level course is designed to use both audio and visual learning to help you begin to grasp the basics of the Korean language.

Let's look first at how the book works. Following this introduction, you will find a section on pronunciation and the writing system. Use it in conjunction with the CDs to become fully acquainted with the sounds of Korean, and use the exercises to start becoming familiar with how the alphabet works in syllables. The first five lessons feature transliteration along with the Hangeul, but after Lesson 5, you'll need to be able to read Hangeul to understand what's going on. After you're familiar with pronunciation and Hangeul, you can begin the 15 lessons, each dedicated to a unique topic. Each lesson in the book is divided into several individual sections:

#### *Vocabulary Warm-Up*

The vocabulary warm-up kicks off the lesson with key words you will hear in the dialogue. Many will be related to the topic of the lesson; some will be related to the grammar you will be learning in that particular lesson.

#### *Dialogue*

The dialogue in each lesson serves the double purpose of allowing you to read and hear natural Korean at work and to learn about Korean culture as well. Read these dialogues carefully; they will contain the grammar and key phrases that you will be learning later in the lesson.

#### *Vocabulary*

The vocabulary list is a mini-glossary for the lesson, containing new words from the dialogue. You can refer to this list while reading through the dialogue or study it separately to improve your Korean vocabulary.

#### *Key Phrases*

The key phrases section of each lesson contains words or phrases pertaining to a specific topic. Even if you don't manage to get a full grasp of the grammar right away, having several of these phrases on hand will make you feel much more confident in your grasp of the language.

#### *Culture Notes*

Each lesson contains two culture notes. These notes are intended to give you a window on Korean culture. In these notes, you will learn everything from the history of such places as Seoul and Jeju Island to Korean traditions, from the ingredients typically found in Korean cuisine to the history of the Korean language itself.

#### *Grammar*

In each grammar note, you will learn a new aspect of Korean grammar. Each section contains example sentences showing the grammar in use. Grammar can be tricky for many beginning language learners, especially with a language which looks and sounds so different from English, but stick with it. These are the tools of language learning; without them, the nuts and bolts won't hold together.

#### *Exercises*

The exercises in each lesson will test you on the grammar and vocabulary you've learned in each lesson. In addition to the exercise at the end of the lesson, there is also a comprehension exercise following the dialogue to test your understanding of what occurred in the dialogue.

#### *Independent Language Task*

The most important part of learning a language is practice. These language tasks end the lesson with ideas for practicing and improving on everything you've learned so far. They will often take the form of a journal entry, but there may also be suggestions for where to go to practice your Korean further.

Fight the urge to skip ahead; each section contains a unique building block to language learning, and by using each section progressively, you will have all the materials you need to learn Korean at a basic level. After you have completed an entire lesson, however, feel free to go back and review any section you wish to review! In fact, we encourage you to review frequently to continue to reinforce your Korean skills.

Finally, this book also includes Korean-English and English-Korean glossaries containing all the vocabulary from each lesson. Refer to it if you find yourself forgetting vocabulary from previous lessons.

The audio portion of this course is divided into two sets: Set A and Set B.

Set A includes the dialogue, vocabulary, key phrases, and several grammar examples from each lesson. This part of the audio course should be used along with the book, following the order of each lesson, allowing you to hear how the words on the page translate into spoken Korean.

*\*Helpful Hint:* Once you have listened to the dialogue several times while reading along with the book, try listening to it without the book. It may seem counterintuitive to hear a language without translation, but listening to Korean without any English can help attune your ear to the language and will make understanding specific words easier down the line.

Set B is intended to be used on the go to supplement your studies. It contains the dialogue from each lesson, broken down into easily digestible sentences. You will hear pauses after each line of dialogue; use the pause to repeat the line and practice your pronunciation. Set B also includes several audio-only exercises that do not appear in the book. These are intended for you to use to practice what you've just learned, be it phrases used in the dialogue or key grammar points. It is best to use these exercises following the section they pertain to in the book, but they can also be used when you've completed the lesson to reinforce what you've learned.

Make sure that you are comfortable with the material taught in one lesson before moving on to the next one! Remember: Language learning is a gradual process; it won't happen overnight. Still, with repeated listening and reading, you will find yourself becoming a better and better Korean speaker each time you pick up this course.

Good luck! 행운을 빕니다

## KOREAN ALPHABET, PRONUNCIATION, AND HANGEUL

The Korean orthographic system is called *Hangeul* 한글. Sounds are represented by symbols (*Jamo* 자모), and the *Jamo* are combined into syllables. Either two or three characters are combined to form a single syllable; on rare occasions, four *Jamo* will be combined in one syllable.

## THE KOREAN ALPHABET

(Letter/Name)

ㄱ giyeok	ㅈ chieut	ㅊ wa
ㅋ ssanggiyeok	ㅋ kieuk	ㅌ wae
ㄴ nieun	ㅌ tieut	ㄹ oe
ㄷ digeut	ㅍ pieup	ㅍ yo
ㅌ ssangdigeut	ㅎ hieut	ㅍ u
ㄹ rioul	ㅏ a	ㅑ wo
ㅁ mieum	ㅓ ae	ㅕ we
ㅂ bieup	ㅗ ya	ㅛ wi
ㅃ ssangbieup	ㅛ yae	ㅜ yu
ㅅ siot	ㅜ eo	ㅡ eu
ㅆ ssangsiot	ㅟ e	ㅡ ui
ㅇ ieung	ㅞ yeo	ㅣ i
ㅈ jieut	ㅟ ye	
ㅉ ssangjieut	ㅚ o	

## PRONUNCIATION

The consonant characters are said to illustrate the position of the tongue, teeth, and lips when pronouncing that particular letter. Notice how the characters for corresponding voiced and voiceless consonants are similar in Hangeul. There are several exceptions to pronunciation rules in Korean; pay close attention to the audio portion of this course so that you learn carefully how to pronounce each word.

### Consonants

Symbol	Romani- zation	Pronunciation	Korean Example
ㄱ	g	like 'k' in 'kept'; like 'g' in 'go' when between vowels	가방, 학교
ㅋ	k	like 'k' in 'kept'	크다
ㄴ	n	like 'n' in 'never'	내일

ㄷ	d	like 't' in 'tip'; like 't' in 'stop' when between vowels	닭, 줏다
ㅌ	t	like 't' in 'tip'	토끼
ㄹ	r/l	like 'l' in 'lip'; between vowels, like 'r' in 'rail'	라디오, 일요일
ㅅ	s	like 's' in 'pass'; when followed by   (i), like 'sh' in 'she'	쌈, 시간
ㅈ	j	like 'j' in 'jump' when between vowels; sometimes like 'ch' in 'check'	지유
ㅊ	ch	like 'ch' in 'check'	차
ㅁ	m	like 'm' in 'mother'	매일
ㅂ	b	like 'b' in 'boy' when between vowels; sometimes like 'p' in 'pick'	배, 밥
ㅍ	p	like 'p' in 'pick'	파도
ㅇ	-/ng	The zero initial is used in syllables that begin with a vowel sound. When it follows a vowel at the end of a syllable, it is pronounced 'ng.' 안 = an; 녀 = nyeong	안녕
ㅎ	h	like English 'h' in 'hot'; when appearing before ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, or ㅈ, it is not pronounced, but instead aspirates the following consonant: ㄱ (k), ㄷ (t), ㅂ (p), or ㅈ (ch)	하나

#### Double Consonants

ㄱ	gg/kk	like 'k' in 'kept' but tensed	까치
ㄷ	dd/tt	like 't' in 'stop' but tensed	땅
ㅂ	bb/pp	like 'p' in 'picture' but tensed	빵

ㅅ	ss	like 's' in 'spit' but tensed; when followed by   (i), like 'sh' in 'she' but tensed	싸움
ㅆ	jj	like 'j' in 'jump' but tensed	짜장면

#### Vocalics

##### Pure Vowels

ㅏ	o	like 'o' in 'so'	오늘
ㅑ	eo	like 'u' in 'cup'	어제
ㅓ	a	like 'a' in 'father'	아침
ㅣ	i	like 'ee' in 'feet'	이제
ㅜ	u	like 'oo' in 'coop'	우라
ㅡ	eu	like 'u' in 'put' but pronounced further back in the throat	음악

##### lotized Vowels

ㅝ	yo	like 'yo' in 'yo-yo'	요즘
ㅞ	yeo	like 'you' in 'young'	여름
ㅟ	ya	like 'ya' in 'yacht'	약속
ㅠ	yu	like 'you' in 'youth'	우유

##### Diphthongs

ㅘ	ae	like 'e' in 'set'	재미
ㅙ	yae	like 'yet' without 't'	얘기
ㅚ	e	like 'a' in 'take'	세빈
ㅜ	ye	like 'yay'	계속
ㅜ	wa	like 'wa' in 'water'	과일
ㅜ	wae	like 'wa' in 'way'	왜소
ㅜ	oe	like 'we' in 'wet'	괴물
ㅜ	wo	like 'wa' in 'war'	원
ㅜ	we	like 'we' in 'weigh'	궤도
ㅜ	wi	like 'whea' in 'wheat'	귀
ㅜ	ui	like 'we,' only without a strong 'w' sound at the beginning	의자, 우리의

## Liaison

Korean has rules of liaison, which state that when certain sounds are combined, some of them will change to become new sounds. This happens in other languages as well; think of the difference in American English between "rate" and "rated": the "t" sound changes to a "d" sound before "-ed," even though the spelling is unchanged. This is very similar to the Korean rules of liaison, which are as follows:

### ㅋ, ㅍ, and ㅌ

Whenever you see ㅋ (k), ㅍ (p), or ㅌ (t) before ㄹ (l), ㅁ (m), or ㄴ (n), they are pronounced (ng), (m), and (n), respectively. ㄹ (l), if following any of the three above, also changes to an (n) sound through this liaison.

습 + 니 = 습니

seup + ni = seumnri

고맙습니다

Gomapseumnida. (Thank you.)

### ㄹ

When ㄹ (l) follows any consonant other than ㄹ (l) or ㄴ (n), it is pronounced (n). When ㄹ (l) and ㄴ (n) are together in any combination (ㄹ + ㄴ / ㄴ + ㄹ), they are pronounced as (ll).

## Consonant Endings

Any word ending in a consonant and not followed by a particle will swallow the final consonant. This means that you will begin to pronounce the sound but not completely pronounce it.

### ㄷ (ch), ㅈ (j), ㅅ (s), ㅆ (ss), and ㅎ (h)

When any of these consonants appear at the end of the word, they are swallowed, as above, but the beginning of the sound you produce will be the beginning of a (t) sound.

## HOW HANGEUL WORKS

Let's start to look at how these individual letters combine to form syllables.

ㅇ + ㅏ + ㄴ = 안  
ø + a + n = an

ㄴ + ㅕ + ㅇ = 녕  
n + yeo + ng = nyeong

ㅎ + ㅏ = 하

h + a = ha

ㅅ + ㅔ = 세

s + e = se

ㅇ + ㅕ = 요

ø + yo = yo

Let's also look at how these syllables combine to form words and phrases.

안 + 녕 + 하 + 세 + 요 = 안녕하세요?

An + nyeong + ha + se + yo = Annyeonghaseyo? (How are you?)

Again:

ㄱ + ㅕ = 고

g + o = go

ㅁ + ㅏ + ㅍ = 맵

m + a + p = map

ㅅ + ㅔ + ㅍ = 습

s + eu + p = seup

ㄴ + ㅣ = 니

n + i = ni

ㄷ + ㅏ = 다

d + a = da

고 + 맵 + 습 + 니 + 다 = 고맙습니다

Go + map + seup + ni + da = Gomapseumnida.\*

Thank you (fml./polite).

\*Notice the rule of liaison as it works in this expression.

## HANGEUL PRACTICE

It is important that you learn the letters and syllables in order to have a good understanding of Korean. The lessons in this book beyond Lesson 5 will not include transliteration, so it is important to have a good grasp of Hangeul before proceeding. Get started practicing with the following exercises.

A. Write out the Hangeul for the syllables below.

1. gan
2. da
3. neol
4. rip
5. song
6. ap

7. hwa
8. jal
9. gyeong
10. meu

B. Write the following phrases in Hangeul.

1. Eodi gaseyo? (*Where are you going?*)
2. Hangugeo leul haseyo? (*Do you speak Korean?*)
3. Jal hasi neun deyo. (*You're doing well.*)

C. For further practice, copy the Korean alphabet, repeating the sound of the letter as you write. Every time you come across a new Korean word in the lessons, cover the Hangeul and try to write it out following the transliteration. Do the same thing the opposite way until you have a good grasp of each letter and are better at recognizing syllables in Hangeul.

### ANSWER KEY

- A. 1. 간    2. 다    3. 널    4. 립    5. 송    6. 압/앞    7. 화  
 8. 잘    9. 경    10. 므
- B. 1. 어디 가세요? 2. 한국어를 하세요? 3. 잘 하시는데요.

## LESSON

# 1

안녕하세요?

How Are You?

In this lesson, you will learn how to greet people and how to ask everyday questions in a simple form. You'll also learn how to use one polite form, topic particles, and useful expressions. Throughout this lesson, you will be presented with a great deal of useful vocabulary as well as many interesting cultural facts to get you started learning Korean. Let's start with a bit of vocabulary warm-up!

### 1A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

안녕하세요?	Annyeonghaseyo?	<i>How are you?</i>
어디 가세요?	Eodi gaseyo?	<i>Where are you going?</i>
바빠요.	Bappayo.	<i>I am busy.</i>
공부해요.	Gongbuhaeyo.	<i>I am studying.</i>
일해요.	Ilhaeyo.	<i>I am working.</i>
요즘 어때요?	Yojeum eottaeyo?	<i>How are you these days?</i>
뭐 하세요?	Mwo haseyo?	<i>What are you doing?</i>

### 1B. DIALOGUE

Minho and Eunji know each other from the college that they went to together in Seoul. This morning, they run into each other at the bus stop.

민호: 은지씨, 안녕하세요?

Minho: Eunjissi, annyeonghaseyo?

은지: 어, 안녕하세요, 민호씨?

Eunji: Eo, annyeonghaseyo, Minhossi?

민호: 지금 어디 가세요?

Minho: Jigeum eodi gaseyo?

은지: 회사에 가요. 민호씨는 어디 가세요?



Eunji: Hoesae gayo. Minhossineun eodi gaseyo?

민호: 학교에 가요. 은지씨, 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?

Minho: Hakgyoe gayo. Eunjissi, yojeum eotteoge jinaeseyo?

은지: 요즘 정말 바빠요. 일이 많아요. 민호씨는 어때요?

Eunji: Yojeum jeongmal bappayo. Iri manayo. Minhossineun eottaeyo?

민호: 저도 바빠요. 저는 공부 할게 많아요.

Minho: Jeodo bappayo. Jeoneun gongbu halge manayo.

은지: 오늘 뭐 하세요?

Eunji: Oneul mwo haseyo?

민호: 저는 오늘 공부해요. 은지씨는요?

Minho: Jeoneun oneul gongbuhaseyo. Eunjissineunyo?

은지: 저는 일해요. 민호씨, 그런데, 내일 뭐 하세요? 내일도 바빠요?

Eunji: Jeoneun ilhaeyo. Minhossi, geureonde, naeil mwo haseyo? Naeildo bappayo?

민호: 아, 내일은 안 바빠요.

Minho: A, naeileun an bappayo.

은지: 그럼 내일 같이 영화관에 가요!

Eunji: Geureom naeil gachi yeonghwagwane gayo!

민호: 좋은 생각이예요!

Minho: Joheun saenggakinaeyo!

Minho: *Eunji, how are you?*

Eunji: *Oh, how are you, Minho?*

Minho: *Where are you going now?*

Eunji: *I am going to work. Where are you going, Minho?*

Minho: *I am going to school. How are you doing these days?*

Eunji: *I'm really busy these days. I have a lot of work. How about you, Minho?*

Minho: *I'm also busy. I have a lot of studying to do.*

Eunji: *What are you doing today?*

Minho: *I am studying today. And you, Eunji?*

Eunji: *I am working. Minho, by the way, what are you doing tomorrow? Are you also busy tomorrow?*

Minho: *Ah, I'm not busy tomorrow.*

Eunji: *Then let's go to a movie theater together tomorrow!*

Minho: *That's a great idea!*

### Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- What was the expression Minho used as a greeting to Eunji?  
a) 바빠요?                      b) 안녕하세요?                      c) 어디 가세요?
- Where is Eunji going?  
a) 회사에 가요                      b) 학교에 가요                      c) 영화관에 가요
- What do they want to do together?  
a) 공부해요                      b) 일해요                      c) 영화관에 가요
- 안녕하세요 means \_\_\_\_\_.
- 바빠요 means \_\_\_\_\_.

### 1C. VOCABULARY

안녕하세요? (안녕하다)*	Annyeonghaseyo? (annyeonghada)	How are you?
-씨	-ssi	Mr./Mrs./Ms.
어디	eodi	where
가세요 (가다)	gaseyo	going/go (hon.)
회사	hoesa	company, work
학교	hakgyo	school

\* Words in parentheses show the verb's dictionary form; remove 다 to find the root form.

요즘	yojeum	<i>lately, these days</i>
정말	jeongmal	<i>really</i>
바빠요 (바쁘다)	bappayo	<i>to be busy (hon.)</i>
일	il	<i>work</i>
좋은 (좋-)	joemun	<i>to be good</i>
많아요 (많다)	manayo	<i>a lot of</i>
어때요?	Eottaeyo?	<i>How is/are ... ?</i>
공부	gongbu	<i>study</i>
-이/가	-i/ga	<i>subject particle</i>
뭐	mwo	<i>what</i>
하세요 (하다)	haseyo	<i>doing</i>
오늘	oneul	<i>today</i>
내일	naeil	<i>tomorrow</i>
-도	-do	<i>also (post.)</i>
안-	an-	<i>not</i>
같이	gachi	<i>together</i>
생각	saenggak	<i>thought</i>
무슨	museun	<i>which</i>
영화관	yeonghwagwan	<i>movie theater</i>
그럼	geureom	<i>then</i>
그런데	geureonde	<i>however</i>
-은/는	eun/neun	<i>topic particle</i>

## 1D. KEY PHRASES

The following phrases are used by Koreans to say hello and good-bye, and in greeting someone in general.

안녕하세요?	Annyeonghaseyo?	<i>How are you? (fml./polite)</i>
안녕하십니까?	Annyeonghash- imnikka?	<i>How are you? (fml./polite)</i>
안녕?	Annyeong?	<i>Hi. (infml./ non-polite)</i>
안녕히 가세요!	Annyeonghi gaseyo!	<i>Good-bye! (fml./polite)</i>

안녕히 가십시오!	Annyeonghi gashipshio!	<i>Good-bye! (fml./ polite)</i>
잘 가!	Jal ga!	<i>Good-bye! (infml./non-polite)</i>
조심해서 가세요!	Joshimhaeseo gaseyo!	<i>Good-bye! (fml./polite)</i>
어서 오세요!	Eoseo oseyo!	<i>Welcome! (fml./polite)</i>
또 봐요!	Tto boeyo!	<i>See you again! (infml./polite)</i>
다음에 봐요!	Daeume boeyo!	<i>See you later! (infml./polite)</i>
요즘 좋아요.	Yojeum joayo.	<i>I'm doing fine these days.</i>
요즘 힘들어요.	Yojeum him- deureoyo.	<i>I'm having a hard time these days.</i>
요즘 재미있어요.	Yojeum jaemi- isseoyo.	<i>I'm having fun these days.</i>

As you can see, there are diverse speech styles in Korean that depend on whom you are addressing. You will learn more about these distinctions in the grammar section.

## 1E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Grammatical subject is often omitted in a Korean sentence. For example, as an English speaker, you would never say "How are?" without a subject. However, Korean expressions often allow the omission of the subject. In fact, many Korean sentences have no grammatical subject, particularly in cases where the grammatical subject is obvious to both speakers in context. For this reason, some linguists have called Korean a "situational language," meaning that many expressions depend on the situation or conversational context.

## 1F. GRAMMAR

### Honorifics

Korean has a highly developed polite and non-polite expression system incorporated into its grammar. The politeness appears either in a variety of honorific words used in the sentence or in the use of polite sentence endings.

<i>meal</i>	밥 bap (non-polite)	진지 jinji (polite)
<i>to sleep</i>	자다 jada (non-polite)	주무시다 jumushida (polite)

## POLITE AND NON-POLITE ENDINGS:

-ㅂ니다/습니다*	-mnida/-seumnida	<i>fml./polite</i>
-어/아요	-eo/ayō	<i>infml./polite</i>
-어/아	-eo/a	<i>non-polite</i>

\*-ㅂ니다 (-mnida) is used after vowels, -습니다 (-seumnida) is used after consonants.

Let's see some examples of a verb-and-ending combination. The verb we'll use in this example is 가 (ga), "to go."

가 + ㅂ니다 = 갑니다	ga + bnida = gamnida*	(I/You/She/He/We They) go/goes. (fml./polite)
가 + (-아)요 = 가요	ga + (-a) yo = gayo	(I/You/She/He/We They) go/goes. (infml./polite)
가 + (-아) = 가	ga + (-a) = ga	(I/You/She/He/We They) go/goes. (non-polite)

\*Don't forget liaison!

The -아 (a) is omitted in the forms above because the verb stem 가 (ga) ends with the same vowel.

*Polite endings* are used when speaking with a person who is older or who holds higher social status, or with someone you are meeting for the first time. *Non-polite endings* are used between close friends or with a person who is younger than you. Koreans are generally sensitive to age because age differences direct which speech style they will have to use in their conversation. Also, note that using a non-polite (plain) form in speech does not mean that the older person does not respect the younger. To convert an honorific to a plain form, simply drop 요 at the end of the verb in almost all cases, as in the last example above.

In Korean, the verb is always located at the end of a sentence and combined with one of the endings above. It is important to choose the correct ending to be culturally correct in Korean, so study these carefully. Verb stems in Korean accompany other grammar elements, such as tense, modals, politeness, and many other grammar patterns.

## Present Tense

The simplest way of forming the present tense in Korean is by using the following formula:

verb stem + polite/friendly ending = present tense verb

가 + 요 = 가요	Ga + yo = gayo	(I/You/He/She/We/ They) go/goes.
많아 + 요 = 많아요	Manha + yo = manayo	It's a lot.

The verbs in Korean are not conjugated based on person. Look at the following examples:

가요.	Gayo.	(I/You/She/He/ We/They) go/goes.
먹어요.	Meogeoyo.	(I/You/She/He/ We/They) eat/eats.
운동해요.	Undonghaeyo.	(I/You/She/He/ We/They) exercise/exercises.

## Topic Particle

Particles are similar to such English words as *in, at, to, by, with*, etc. Korean particles, however, are always attached to a preceding word. Particles are used mostly with nouns, and sometimes with adverbs, to denote the role each one plays in the Korean sentence. For example, in the English sentence "I am going to school," we recognize the subject and object based on word order and verb agreement. In Korean, particles are used to make this distinction. You can think of particles as "name tags" that indicate the noun's function in the sentence. This particle attachment is one of the most important features in Korean. Particles are very basic yet very different features from English that initially confuse English speakers when learning Korean, so keep in mind the importance of the use of particles.

The first particle that we will learn is the *topic particle*. Topic particles are particularly important in Korean because of their versatile usage. Korean expressions use the topic particle when a speaker wants to intro-



duce a new topic, an idea, a person, or an object as the next main topic of a conversation. The topic particle has two alternatives, depending on whether the preceding sound is a consonant or a vowel:

-이	eun	used after consonants
-니	neun	used after vowels

The consonant/vowel relations are fairly important in Korean grammar. Other particles that we will learn in following lessons also employ the same consonant/vowel alternation rules. Let's look at an example now of how we use the topic particles depending on the consonant/vowel relations.

일 ("I" is consonant) + 은	il + eun	as for work
민지 ("I" is vowel) + 는	Minji + neun	as for Minji

### Word Order

Korean word order is typically "subject-object-verb." However, Korean word order is relatively flexible when compared to English because of the Korean supplementary particles system. Particles act as a name tag for a word, signaling what part of speech the given word represents in the sentence. Therefore, even though a word may be moved around to different places within a sentence, a Korean native speaker can recognize the function of the word (and therefore, the meaning of the sentence) based on the kind of particle attached to it. Only the verb cannot move around; it must always appear at the end of the sentence. For this reason, Korean is often called a verb-final language. The following examples show this flexible word order:

저는 학교에 가요 <i>I + to school + go</i> <i>Subj. + obj. + verb</i>	Jeoneun haggoyo gayo.	<i>I go to school.</i>
학교에 저는 가요 <i>To school + I + go</i> <i>Obj. + subj. + verb</i>	Hakgyoe jeoneun gayo.	<i>I go to school.</i>

The meaning of the second sentence is closer to "As for school, I go there," or, "As for me, I go to school," depending on which word carries the accentuation in speech. The accented word receives more focus.

## 1G. READING

Read the following e-mail sent from Minhoo. Underline the words what you already recognize. Notice that some words are incorporated into a one-unit word chunk.

안녕하세요? 오래간만입니다. 저는 회사에 잘 다니고 있어요. 그리고 밤에는 학교에도 가요. 매일 바쁘고 일도 많지만 이런 생활이 재미있어요.

Annyeonghaseyo? Oraeganmanimnida. Jeoneun hoesae jal danigo isseoyo. Geurigo bameneun hakgyoedo gayo. Maeil bappeugo ildo manjiman ireon saenghwali jaemiisseoyo.

*How are you doing? It's been a long time. I am doing fine working for my company. And night, I also go to school. Although I am busy and I have a lot to do, I like this life; it is fun.*

### NEW VOCABULARY

오래간만입니다.	Oraeganmanimnida.	<i>It's been a long time.</i> <i>(fml./polite)</i>
다니다	danida	<i>attend (v.)</i>
밤	bam	<i>night</i>
매일	maeil	<i>every day</i>
이런	ireon	<i>this type</i>
생활	saenghwal	<i>lifestyle</i>
재미있어요	jaemiisseoyo	<i>be interesting (v.)</i>

## 1H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

The Korean language has a long and widely-debated history. One theory on the early origins of Korean is that it branched out from the Ural-Altaic language family as Koreans gradually moved from the northern region of Asia to southern parts over the course of thousands of years during the prehistoric era. The classification of the Ural-Altaic language family is rather a theoretical grouping, and many linguists agree that some languages can be grouped according to the linguistic commonalities in sound and grammar rules. Some distinctive features of Ural-Altaic languages include the vowel harmony phenomenon, which is an integral

rule in Korean. The Ural-Altai languages do not have gender distinction in grammar either, and there is no use of affixes. Many of the main features of Ural-Altai languages arguably comply with the core grammar and sound structure of Korean language as well. Other languages in Ural-Altai language family are Turkish, Manchurian, and Mongolian. Although Japanese language shows other similarities to Korean, such as word order and the use of particles, some linguists argue that Japanese does not belong to Ural-Altai language family based on its underlying core sound rules and structural grammar features.

### EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

안녕 *annyeong*      일이 *iri*      어때요 *eottaeyo*  
 저는 *jeoneun*      영화관 *yeonghwagwan*

A. \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 하세요?

B. 안녕하세요? 어디 가세요?

A. 지금 저는 학교에 가요. 어디 가세요?

B. \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_에 가요.

A. 무슨 영화가 좋아요?

B. “스타워즈”가 좋아요.

A. 아, 요즘 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 많아요.

B. 저도 일이 많아요.

A. 공부는 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_?

B. 공부도 할 게 많아요!

B. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate topic particle.

1. 저 \_\_\_\_\_ 내일 일 안해요.

2. 내일 \_\_\_\_\_ 바빠요.

3. 은지씨 \_\_\_\_\_ 오늘 뭐 하세요?

4. “호텔 르완다” \_\_\_\_\_ 좋아요.

5. 어디 \_\_\_\_\_ 좋아요?

6. 오늘 \_\_\_\_\_ 공부 안 해요.

C. Using the given verbs in parentheses, complete the sentences with the infml./polite ending “-어/아요.”

1. (가다) 내일 같이 영화관에 \_\_\_\_\_.

2. (좋다) 저는 공부가 \_\_\_\_\_.

3. (바빠다) 민호씨, 내일도 \_\_\_\_\_?

4. (많다) 오늘은 일이 \_\_\_\_\_.

5. (공부하다) 저는 학교에서 \_\_\_\_\_.

6. (하다) 내일 학교에서 뭐 \_\_\_\_\_.

D. Answer the following questions in Korean. Include the expressions given in parentheses in your answers, and use the infml./polite speech style to complete the sentences.

1. 내일 학교에서 뭐해요? (to work) \_\_\_\_\_

2. 내일 일해요? (positive answer) \_\_\_\_\_

3. 내일 일해요? (to study) \_\_\_\_\_

4. 무슨 영화가 좋아요? (*Hotel Rwanda*) \_\_\_\_\_

5. 오늘 영화관에 가요? (positive answer) \_\_\_\_\_

E. Translate the following sentences into Korean.

1. How are you?

2. I am busy.

3. Where are you going? (informal polite)

4. I am going to the movie theater.

5. I have a lot of work.

### ANSWER KEY

#### Comprehension Practice

1. b) 안녕하세요? 2. a) 회사에 가요 3. c) 영화관에 가요  
 4. 안녕하세요 means “How are you?” 5. 바빠요 means “I am busy.”

#### Exercises

A. 1. 안녕 2. 저는 3. 영화관 4. 일이 5. 어때요

B. 1. 는 2. 은 3. 는 4. 는 5. 가 6. 은

C. 1. 가요 2. 좋아요 3. 바빠요 4. 많아요 5. 공부해요 6. 해요

D. 1. 일해요. 2. 네, 내일 일해요. 3. 내일 공부해요. 4. 호텔 르완다가 좋아요. 5. 네, 오늘 영화관에 가요.

E. 1. 안녕하세요? 2. 저는 바빠요. 3. 어디 가세요?

4. 영화관에 가요. 5. 일이 많아요.

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE: KOREAN JOURNAL

Now it is your turn to practice Korean by starting a daily journal using the expressions and grammar you have learned in this lesson. Imagine how applicable the lessons will be in describing your daily life. Try to employ newly learned vocabulary items in your sentences and try to use more vocabulary as you proceed through the lessons. For example, in this lesson's journal entry, you can try using the topic particles wherever they are appropriate. Remember as well that sentences in Korean must end with some sort of appropriate ending, so use a friendly/polite ending for now in your journal. Try to follow the actual order of your daily actions. Write down the greeting portion of the conversations that you have throughout the day, and then try to translate them into Korean. You may want to use words from this lesson, such as *school, work, to go, to be busy, tomorrow, today, movie theater*, etc. Learning a new language doesn't happen in a day, even for geniuses! In fact, the only way you can be fluent in a foreign language is to structurally and intentionally repeat newly learned words and continue to practice by adding new words to your sentences. This exercise will continuously help you to build your vocabulary and grammar over time as our lessons progress.

## LESSON

# 2

영화가관이 어디예요?

## Where Is the Movie Theater?

In Lesson 2, you will learn all about asking directions around South Korea's capital city, Seoul. By the end of the lesson, you will be able to ask and answer "where is . . ." questions, as well as know how to use subject particles and directional particles.

### 2A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

여기	yeogi	here
저기	jeogi	there
어디에서	eodieseo	from where
지하철	jihacheol	subway
버스	beoseu	bus
시청역	Sicheongyeok	Sicheong (city hall) station
사람들	saramdeul	people
오른쪽으로	oreunjjoeuro	to the right
빨리 가요!	Ppali gayo!	Let's go quickly!

### 2B. DIALOGUE

Eunji and Minho are meeting each other in central Seoul. Eunji waves to Minho as he appears from the street.

은지: 민호씨, 여기예요!

Eunji: Minhossi, yeogiyeyo!

민호: 아, 은지씨! 안녕하세요!

Minho: Ah, Eunjissi, annyeonghaseyo!

은지: 어서오세요! 지금 어디에서 와요?

Eunji: Eoseooseyo! Jigeum eodieseo wayo?

민호: 시청역 지하철에서요. 지하철에 사람들이 너무 많아요. 은지씨는요?

Minho: Sicheongyeok jihacheoleseoyo. Jihacheole saramdeuli neomu manayo. Eunjissineunyo?

은지: 교보 문고에서요. 길에 사람들이 참 많아요. 그런데, 서울에 영화관이 참 많아요.

Eunji: Gyobo mungoeseyo. Gile saramdeuli cham manayo. Geureonde, seoule yeonghwagwani cham manayo.

민호: 네, 그런데, “킹콩” 은 어디에서 해요?

Minho: Ne, geureonde, King Kong eun eodieseo haeyo?

은지: 글썽요... 아, 저기에서 해요.

Eunji: Geulsseyo... Ah, jeogieseo haeyo.

민호: 어디요?

Minho: Eodiyo?

은지: 저기 커피숍 보이세요? 그 오른쪽이에요.

Eunji: Jeogi keopishop boiseyo? Geu oreunjikoyeyo.

민호: 아, 알겠어요. 고맙습니다.

Minho: Ah, algesseoyo. Gomapseumnida.

은지: 그럼, 영화관에 가요.

Eunji: Geureum, yeonghwagwane gayo.

민호: 네, 그래요!

Minho: Ne, geuraeyo!

Eunji: *Minho, I'm here!*

Minho: *Ah, Eunji! How are you?*

Eunji: *Welcome! (lit., Come on in!) Where are you coming from now?*

Minho: *From Sicheong station. There are so many people in the subway. How about you?*

Eunji: *From Gyobo bookstore. There are a lot of people on the street. By the way, there are so many movie theaters in Seoul.*

Minho: *Yeah, but where are they playing King Kong?*

Eunji: *Well... They're playing it there!*

Minho: *Where?*

Eunji: *Can you see the coffee shop? It's on the right side of that.*

Minho: *Ah, I see. Thank you.*

Eunji: *Then let's go to the theater.*

Minho: *Yes, let's do that!*

### Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- Where are Minho and Eunji going?  
a) 학교                      b) 회사                      c) 영화관
- Where did Minho come from?  
a) 시청역                      b) 커피숍                      c) 교보 문고
- How do you say "I see"?  
a) 어서오세요                      b) 고맙습니다                      c) 알겠어요
- 어디예요 means \_\_\_\_\_.
- 네 means \_\_\_\_\_.

### 2C. VOCABULARY

여기예요	yeogiyeyo	(be) here (hon.)
와요 (오다)	wayo	come, coming
시청역	Sicheongyeok	Sicheong (city hall) station
지하철	jihacheol	subway
에서요	eseoyo	from
사람 (들)	saram (deul)	person(s)
너무	neomu	too much
교보 문고	Gyobo mungo	Gyobo bookstore (the largest bookstore in Seoul)
버스	beoseu	bus
탸어요 (타다)	tasseoyo	got on, rode

그런데	geureonde	by the way, well, but (change in topic)
참	cham	very
해요 (하다)	haeyo	do/does
커피숍	keopishop	coffee shop
네	ne	yes
보이세요? (보이다)	boiseyo	Can you see . . . ?
그	geu	that
오른쪽에	oreunjjoke	on the right
바로	baro	right away, soon
알겠어요. (알다)	Algesseoyo.	I see.
고맙습니다. (고맙다)	Gomapseumnida.	Thank you.
볼까요? (보다)	Bolkkayo?	Shall we see?
그래요. (그렇다)	Geuraeyo.	Yes, let's do so. (statement of agreement)
어디	eodi	where
글썸요.	Geulsseyo.	Oh, well.

## 2D. KEY PHRASES

The following phrases are frequently used by Koreans to say "thank you" and "you're welcome."

고맙습니다.	Gomapseumnida.	Thank you. (fml./polite)
고마워요.	Gomawoyo.	Thank you. (infml./polite)
고마워.	Gomawo.	Thank you. (infml./non-polite)
감사합니다.	Gamsahamnida.	Thank you. (fml./polite)
감사해요.	Gamsahaeyo.	Thank you. (infml./polite)
땡큐.	Ttangkyu.	Thank you. (colloquial; from English)

When someone uses any of these expressions, you should answer with one of the following phrases to show respect.

천만에요.	Cheonmaneyo.	Not at all.
괜찮아요.	Guenchanayo.	It's all right./ I don't mind.
별 말씀어요.	Byeol malsseumeulyo.	You don't need to say that.
별 거 아니에요.	Byeol geo aniyeyo.	It's nothing.

## 2E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Korean is called a verb-final language. The verb will always appear at the end of the sentence. Apart from the location of the verb, general word order is relatively flexible depending on the speaker's intention. When the speaker wishes to put more emphasis on an element, he or she will place it at the beginning of the sentence. For this reason, particles are necessary in Korean to determine the function of each word in the sentence. Otherwise, flexible word order would yield just a random assignment of meaning. Remember that the most common word order in Korean is subject-object-verb (SOV) pattern for general statements.

## 2F. GRAMMAR

### Subject Particles

Subject particles are attached to the preceding nouns or pronouns to make a given noun (or pronoun) the subject of a sentence. As we previously observed in Lesson 1, a noun with an attached subject particle looks like just one word after the binding. Remember that in Korean, particles (including the subject particle, object particle, location particle, topic particle, and other postpositions) always come after the noun.

Let's take a look at the subject particles. You already saw a few examples of subject particles in the dialogues in Lesson 1 and this lesson. Remember how the topic particles -은/-는 alternate depending on whether the preceding sound is a consonant or a vowel? The subject particles work the same way. There are two alternatives.

-이	-i	used after consonants
-가	-ga	used after vowels



The following example demonstrates this alternation.

역 (“k” sound, consonant) + 이	yeok + i	station (sub.)
버스 (“eu” sound, vowel) + 가	beoseu + ga	bus (sub.)

시청역이 저기 있어요.	Sicheongyeogi jeogi isseoyo.	Sicheong station is over there.
버스가 여기 와요.	Beoseuga yeogi wayo.	The bus is coming here.

### “Where Is . . .” Expressions

Imagine how often you use the expression “where is . . .” in English—nearly every day! It is very useful to learn this expression in Korean right off the bat. The good news is that this question form in Korean is very easy. Just place 어디예요 (eodiyeoyo) after the subject. 어디 (eodi) is the question word “where,” and 예요 (yeyo) is the polite form of the verb “to be.” Look at the following examples.

SUBJECT + 어디 + 예요		
시청역이 어디예요?	Sicheongyeogi eodiyeoyo?	Where is Sicheong station?
교보 문고가 어디예요?	Gyobo mungoga eodiyeoyo?	Where is Gyobo bookstore?

When you ask a question in Korean, raise your intonation just like you would do in English. To answer “where is . . .” questions, you will need a location particle to indicate *in, at, on, to*, etc., along with the verb 있어요 (isseoyo). Take a look at the suggested answers to the above questions.

시청역이 어디예요?	Sicheongyeogi eodiyeoyo?	Where is Sicheong station?
→ 오른쪽에 (right side + location particle) 있어요 (is).	Oruenjjoge isseoyo.	It is on your right side.
영화관이 어디예요?	Yeonghwagwani eodiyeoyo?	Where is the movie theater?
→ 바로 (right) 여기에 (in here) 있어요 (is).	Baro yeogie isseoyo.	It is right here.

You will learn more directional expressions as we venture into future lessons.

### Location Particles -에 and -에서

There are two important location particles in Korean. Each of these two location particles has a different use. First, the particle -에 (-e) is used to indicate *in, at, on*, or *to*. It can also indicate a specific point in time, as you’ll see in the dialogue of Lesson 4. The other location particle, -에서 (-eseo) is used to indicate a place where a certain action takes place; -에서 is also used to mean *from* in English. Let’s take a look at the two pairs of examples.

-에 (e – in, at, on, to)		
학교에 가요.	Hakgyoe gayo.	I am going to school.
영화관에 물어 봐요.	Yeonghwagwane mureo boayo.	Let’s ask at/in the movie theater.

-에서 (eseo – in, at, on [with action verb], from)		
영화는 어디에서 해요?	Yeonghwaneun eodieseo haeyo?	(At) where are they playing the movie?
교보 문고에서 해요. (“from” expression)	Gyobo mungoeseo haeyo.	From Gyobo bookstore.

## 2G. READING

Read the following daily planner entry written by Minho. Underline the sentences that you understand, and see if you can identify some new vocabulary.

오늘은 공부를 하고 영화관에 가요. 먼저 버스를 타요. 그리고 지하철을 타요. 지하철을 타고 시청역에서 내려요. 그리고 영화관에 가요. 영화관 이름은 “단성사”예요. 그리고 영화관 앞에서 은지씨를 만나요. 어제 약속을 해서 오늘 같이 영화를 봐요. 우리는 커피를 마셔요. 영화는 “킹콩”이에요!

Oneuleun gongbuleul hago yeonghwagwane gayo. Meonjeo beoseuleul tayo. Geurigo jihacheoleul tayo. Jihacheoleul tago sicheongyeoke-seo naeryeoyo. Geurigo yeonghwagwane gayo. Yeonghwagwan ireumeun Dan Seong Sa yeyo. Geurigo yeonghwagwan apeseo Eunjissileul mannayo. Eoje yaksokkeul haeseo oneul gachi younghwaleul boayo. Urineun keopireul masieoyo. Younghwaneun “King Kong” iyeyo!

*Today I am studying and going to the movie theater. First, I get on the bus. And I get on the subway. I ride the subway and get off at the Sicheong station. I go to the movie theater. The name of the movie theater is Dan Seong Sa. And I meet Eunji in front of the movie theater. We made an appointment yesterday to watch a movie together today. We drink coffee. The movie is King Kong!*

## NEW VOCABULARY

고	go	(conj.) and
그리고	geurigo	(adv.) and
내려요	naeryeoyo	get off
단성사	Dan Seong Sa	Dan Seong Sa (the oldest theater in Seoul)
앞	ap	in front of
어제	eoje	yesterday
약속	yaksok	appointment
커피	keopi	coffee
마셔요	masieoyo	drink
킹콩	King Kong	King Kong

## 2H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Seoul, the capital city of South Korea, has been the capital of Korea for more than 600 years. Seoul became a capital city of Korea in 1392 when this region was ruled by the Chosun dynasty. When General Yi Seong-Gye took over the throne from the corrupted Coryeo dynasty, a highly-admired Buddhist monk named Mu-hak pointed out that Seoul would be the best place to settle the new Yi dynasty. Seoul was surrounded by mountains so it could defend Chinese invasions; more importantly, the Han River flows through the center of the city, and could supply enough water for its citizens. The name “Seoul” in ancient Korean meant “capital.” Nowadays, Seoul is completely modern looking, with high-rises and a 63-story skyscraper, along with many modern businesses, restaurants, and stores. Major political decisions are made in the congress in Seoul. Seoul also hosts multiple cultural events including various performances, exhibitions, concerts, and plays. Seoul is truly the central city of politics and culture in Korea. More information about Seoul’s transportation and tourism—including a map of the city—can be found on the Seoul city’s official website at <http://english.seoul.go.kr/>.

## EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

어서요 *eseoyo*    안녕하세요 *annyeonghaseyo*    오세요 *oseyo*  
고맙습니다 *gomapseumnida*    어디 *eodi*

A. 민호씨, \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_?

Minhossi, \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_?

B. 어, 은지씨, 안녕하세요?

Uh, Eunjissi, annyeonghaseyo?

A. 어서 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ . 지금 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 에서 와요?

Eoseo \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ . Jigeum \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ eseo wayo?

B. 시청역 지하철에서요. 은지씨는요?

Sicheongyeok jihacheoleseoyo. Eunjissineunyo?

A. 교보 문고 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ .

Gyobo mungo \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ .

B. 네, 그런데 영화관이 어디예요?

Ne, geureonde yeonghwagwani eodiyeyo?

A. 저기 커피숍 보이세요?

Jeogi keopishop boiseyo?

B. 아, 저기요! \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ .

Ah, jeogiyo! \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ .

## B. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate particle.

1. 지금 어디 ( ) 와요?

Jigeum eodi ( ) wayo?

2. 영화관 ( ) 어디예요?

Yeonghwagwan ( ) eodiyeoyo?

3. 지하철 ( ) 저기예요.

Jihacheol ( ) jeogiyeyo.

4. 오늘 ( ) 안 바빠요.

Oneul ( ) an bappayo.

5. 무슨 생각 ( ) 있어요?

Museun saenggak ( ) isseoyo?

## C. Mark the best place in the sentence to insert the words given in parentheses. (No transliteration to help you here! Keep practicing your Hangeul; by Lesson 5 you'll have to know it well enough to read it without the help of transliteration.)

1. (은지씨)

① 지금 ② 어디 ③ 가세요 ④?

2. (오늘)

① 학교에서 ② 민호씨가 ③ 공부해요 ④.

3. (킹콩)

① 그런데 ② 영화관이 ③ 어디예요 ④?

4. (글썸요)

① 사람이 ② 저기 ③ 참 ④ 많네요.

5. (영화 볼까요)

① 은지씨 ② 그럼 ③ 지금 ④.

6. (영화관에서)

① 민호씨 ② 와요 ③?

## D. Translate the following sentences into Korean.

1. I am coming from the subway station now.

2. Excuse me, but...

3. Where is bus?

4. There are so many people.

5. From the movie theater.

## ANSWER KEY

## Comprehension Practice

1. c) 영화관    2. a) 시청역    3. c) 알겠어요  
 4. 어디예요 means "where is/where are."    5. 네 means "yes."

## Exercises

A. 1. 안녕하세요 2. 오세요 3. 어디 4. 에서요 5. 감사합니다

B. 1. 에서 2. 이 3. 이 4. 은 5. 이

C. 1. ① 2. ① 3. ② 4. ① 5. ④ 6. ②

D. 1. 저는 지금 지하철역에서 와요. 2. 실례지만... 3. 버스가 어디에 있어요? 4. 사람들이 너무 많아요. 5. 영화관에서요.



## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Now it's time to use what we learned from this lesson in your journal. This time, we are going to use some information from the Seoul City official website at <http://english.seoul.go.kr>. Go to the website and find some interesting facts about Seoul. If you don't have a computer, look up information on Seoul in an encyclopedia or dictionary. Name three different places, and explain where they are. Try to use subway stations, some location names, and location particles in your sentences. Find three places that you'd like to visit and make a plan on how you'd get from one place to another. Don't forget to practice focus and location particles and alternations in each case.

## LESSON

# 3

이거 얼마예요?

How Much Is It?

In this lesson, you will learn how to ask the price of goods, and how to say the amount of money, along with the relevant noun counters. You will also learn vocabulary for buying clothes at a clothing store, and how to express "this" and "that." Let's get started with a warm-up of key vocabulary!

### 3A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

옷가게	otgage	<i>clothing store</i>
바지	baji	<i>pants</i>
청바지	cheongbaji	<i>blue pants/jeans</i>
필요해요	piryohaeyo	<i>to need</i>
맞겠는데요	matgenneundeyo	<i>to fit</i>
어울려요	eoulryeoyo	<i>(clothes) to go well</i>
세일 가격이에요.	Seil gageogiyeyo.	<i>It's the sale price.</i>
얼마예요?	Eolmayeyo?	<i>How much is it?</i>
한 벌 주세요.	Han beol juseyo.	<i>One pair, please.</i>

### 3B. DIALOGUE

Minho and Eunji enjoyed their movie. Now, they are going shopping for clothes in the area around the movie theater.

민호: 은지씨, 여기 가요.

Minho: Eunjissi, yeogi gayo.

은지: 어디요?

Eunji: Eodiyo?

민호: 여기 이 옷가게에서 세일을 해요. 실은 바지가 좀 필요해요.

- Minho:** Yeogi i otgageeseo seilreul haeyo. Sireun bajiga jom piryo haeyo.
- 은지: 아, 그래요? 그럼 같이 가요. 저는 스웨터가 좀 필요해요.
- Eunji:** Ah, geuraeyo? Geureom gachi gayo. Jeoneun sweteoga jom piryo haeyo.
- 민호: 이 청바지가 저한테 잘맞아요. 어때요?
- Minho:** I cheongbajiga jeohante jalmajayo. Eottaeyo?
- 은지: 어머, 좋아요. 저는 저 스웨터가 좋아요. (Eunji finds a sweater and tries it on.)
- Eunji:** Eomeo, joayo. Jeoneun jeo sweteoga joayo.
- 민호: 그 색깔이 은지씨에게 아주 잘 어울려요. 근데, 좀 큰 것 같아요.
- Minho:** Geu saekkkali Eunjissiege aju jal eoulyeoyo. Geunde, jom keun geot gatayo.
- 은지: 그래요? 여기 어디 작은 사이즈가 있어요?
- Eunji:** Geuraeyo? Yeogi eodi jageun saijeuga isseoyo?
- 민호: 네, 잠깐만요. 여기 있어요. 가격은 18000 원이에요. 세일 가격이에요.
- Minho:** Ne, jamkkanmany. Yeogi isseoyo. Gagyeogeun man pal cheon woniyeyo. Seil gagyeogiyeyo.
- 은지: 아, 그래요? 이 바지는 얼마예요?
- Eunji:** Ah, geuraeyo? I bajineun eolmayeyo?
- 민호: 25000 원이에요. 이 바지도 20% 세일 가격이에요. (looking at the clerk) 이 바지 한 벌 주세요.
- Minho:** Iman ocheon woniyeyo. I bajido 20% (iship prosent) seil gagyeogiyeyo. I baji han beol juseyo.
- 은지: (also looking at the clerk) 저도 이 스웨터 한 벌 주세요.
- Eunji:** Jeodo i sweteo han beol juseyo.
- 민호: 새 스웨터가 아주 좋아요.
- Minho:** Sae sweteoga aju joayo.

은지: 네, 감사합니다. 민호씨 덕분이예요. 계산해 주세요.

**Eunji:** Ne, gamsahamnida. Minhossi deokpunieyo. Gyesanhae juseyo.

**Minho:** Eunji, let's go here.

**Eunji:** Where?

**Minho:** There's a sale in this clothing store here. Actually, I need a pair of pants.

**Eunji:** Ah, is that so? Then, let's go together. I need a sweater.

**Minho:** These blue jeans fit me well. How are they?

**Eunji:** They are good. I like that sweater. (Eunji finds a sweater and tries it on.)

**Minho:** That color goes really well on you. But it looks a bit big (for you).

**Eunji:** Is that so? Is there a smaller size here?

**Minho:** Yes, just a moment. Here it is. The price is 1800 won, and it's the sale price.

**Eunji:** Ah, is that so? Then how much are these pants?

**Minho:** They are 25000 won. Those pants are on 20% sale also. (looking at the clerk) Please give me a pair of these pants.

**Eunji:** (also looking at the clerk) I'll take this sweater, please.

**Minho:** That new sweater looks very good.

**Eunji:** Thank you. Thanks to you. (to the clerk) Please ring it up.

### Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- Where are Minho and Eunji?
 

a) 영화관	b) 옷가게	c) 시청
--------	--------	-------
- What does Eunji buy?
 

a) 스웨터	b) 바지	c) 색깔
--------	-------	-------
- How much does Minho pay for his clothes?
 

a) 18000 원	b) 25000원	c) 20000원
------------	-----------	-----------

4. How do you say "sale price" in Korean? \_\_\_\_\_.

5. "필요해요" means \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3C. VOCABULARY

가 봐요 (가다/보다)	Ga boayo ...	Let's go and see ...
이	i	this
이거	igeo	this thing
그	geu	that
그거	geugeo	that thing
저	jeo	that over there
저거	jeogeo	that thing over there
옷가게	otgage	clothing store
세일	sale	sale
실은	sireun	in fact, actually
바지	baji	pants
좀	jom	well, a little bit
필요해요 (필요하다)	pilyohaeyo	to need
그럼	geureom	then
색깔	saekkal	color
잘 어울려요 (어울리다)	jal eoulryeoyo	to fit well
큰 것 (크다)	keungeot	big thing
같은데요 (같다)	gateundeyo	it seems ...
작은 사이즈	jageun saijeu	small size
잠깐만요	jamkkanmanyoyo	wait a second
여기 있네요 (있다)	yeogi inneyo	here it is
가격	gagyeok	price
그래요? (그렇다)	Geuraeyo?	Is that so?
원	won	won, Korean currency
한 벌	han beol	one pair (noun counter for clothes)
주세요 (주다)	juseyo	to give

입겠네요? (입다) Ipkenneyo?

(I) would be  
wearing, won't I?

### 3D. KEY PHRASES

The following phrases are the most common questions and comments you will hear while shopping for clothes in Korea.

멋있어요!	Meotisseoyo!	You look cool!
날씬해 보여요.	Nalssinhae boyeoyo.	You look thin.
잘 어울려요.	Jal eoulryeoyo.	It fits you well.
색깔이 참 좋아요.	Saekkali cham johayo.	It's a really nice color.
색깔이 잘 어울려요.	Saekkali jal eoulryeoyo.	The color suits you well.
얼마예요?	Eolmayeyo?	How much is this?
좀 싸게 해 주세요.	Jom ssage hae juseyo.	A little bit of a discount, please.
너무 비싸요.	Neomu bissayo.	That's too expensive.
한 벌 주세요.	Han beol juseyo.	I'll take one. (Give me one garment.)
두 벌 주세요.	Du boel juseyo.	I'll take two. (Give me two garments.)
세 벌 주세요.	Se beol juseyo.	I'll take three. (Give me three garments.)
다른 색 있어요?	Dareun saek isseoyo?	Do you have another color?
큰 사이즈 있어요?	Keun saijeu isseoyo?	Do you have a bigger size?
작은 사이즈 있어요?	Jageun saijeu isseoyo?	Do you have a smaller size?
다른 사이즈 있어요?	Dareun saijeu isseoyo?	Do you have another size?
계산해 드리겠습니다.	Gyesanhae deurigetseumnida.	Let me calculate the total.

### 3E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

In Korea there are two kinds of shopping areas for natives: department stores and various independent stores located downtown, and markets in various neighborhoods. The downtown shopping districts, such as Seoul's Myeong Dong and Apgujeong Dong areas have fashionable department stores. In open markets such as Namdaemun and Itaewon, people often haggle over prices. A few cultural tips may help find the best values. According to custom in almost any shop, the first customer is an important sale. Koreans believe the initial sale will determine the tempo of the day's activities. In other words, if the first customer leaves without buying anything then business will likely be slow that day. Conversely, a large first sale is a sign of good luck. Therefore, shoppers who visit a store early may be able to bargain for the best price of the day. Don't go window-shopping in the morning! You may ruin the shopkeeper's day if you buy nothing.

### 3F. GRAMMAR

#### Demonstrative Indexes 이, 그, 저

In English, we use demonstrative pronouns to differentiate between two objects. For example, to refer to something located closer to a speaker, the speaker will use "this" when referring the object. On the other hand, we use "that" for something located far away from the speaker. Korean has three distinctive indexes similar to our demonstrative pronouns. 이 (i) is compatible with "this," when referring to a close object similar to English. 그 (geu) is similar to "that" while 저 (jeo) refers "that thing over there." 그 is also used to refer to an abstract notion as well as a physical location, and it may be used in academic papers, newspaper articles, or essays. 저 is most likely used to index a physically distant object.

이	i	this
그	geu	that
저	jeo	that over there

Using this three-dimensional system, there are two more groups of expressions that we can look at. First are the expressions for "this thing," "that thing," and "that thing over there."

이거	igeo	this thing
그거	geugeo	that thing
저거	jeogeo	that thing over there

Next, we have "here," "there," and "over there," which we've partly seen in Lessons 1 and 2.

여기	yeogi	here
거기	geogi	there
저기	jeogi	over there

These expressions are used as one word in Korean, so it is very useful to remember this reference system.

#### Object Particles

So far we've learned the topic particles -은/는 and the subject particles -이/가. We learned that particles are attached to a word to mark the grammatical function of that particular word. We also learned that those particles alternate depending on whether the preceding sound is a vowel or a consonant. Now let's learn the *object particles*. Object particles are attached to the grammatical object in a sentence. The word that receives an action is the grammatical object. There are two kinds of object particles.

을	eul	use after consonant ending
를	leul	use after vowel ending

In the dialogue, we saw some examples of use of object particles.

이 옷가게에서 세일을 해요.	I otgageeseo seileul haeyo.	This clothing store is having (does) a sale.
스웨터를 좀 보겠어요.	Swetaleul jom bogesseoyo.	I'd like to look around for some sweaters.

## Numbers 1-10 and Noun Counters

Counting numbers in Korean uses two systems: the Sino-Korean system and the Korean-Korean system. The Sino-Korean system is generally used (1) to count larger numbers such as an amount of money or (2) to show nominal figures.

Example of Sino-Korean counting system:

1 = 일 il

10 = 십 sip

100 = 백 baek

\$100 백불 baekbul (a hundred dollars)

101 = 백일 baekil

110 = 백십 baeksip

1000 = 천 cheon

The Korean-Korean system is generally used for ordinal numbers (first, second, third . . .) or with smaller number noun counters. Noun counters are similar to English quantifiers. For example: *a cup of coffee, three sacks of grain, two bottles of beer*, etc. Korean has a highly expressive feature in this part of grammar. The noun counters are always used when counting things. In the dialogue you observed 한 벌 (han beol) which means "one pair (of garment)." 하나 (hana) or 한 (han) means "one," and 벌 (beol) is called a "noun counter" in Korean. The noun-counter is attached to the number to show the nature of the item being counted. Notice that 하나 (hana) changes to 한 (han) when attached to a noun counter; this occurs for numbers from one through four. We've listed both forms below. There are many types of counters in Korean, but we'll show you some of the most common ones in this lesson.

KOREAN-ORIGIN NUMBERS	COUNTING OBJECTS	NOUN COUNTERS	COMBINED EXPRESSION
1 = 하나 hana; 한 han	garment	-벌 beol	한 벌 han beol one garment
2 = 둘 dul; 두 du	person	-명 myeong	두 명 du myeong two people
3 = 셋 set; 세 se	general small object	-개 gae	세 개 se gae three things
4 = 넷 net; 네 ne	age	-살 sal	네 살 ne sal four years old
5 = 다섯 daseot	glass/cup	-잔 jan	다섯 잔 daseot jan five glasses/cups of . . .

KOREAN-ORIGIN NUMBERS	COUNTING OBJECTS	NOUN COUNTERS	COMBINED EXPRESSION
6 = 여섯 yeoseot	tree	-그루 geuru	여섯 그루 yeoseot geuru six trees
7 = 일곱 ilgop	pencil	-자루 jaru	일곱 자루 ilgop jaru seven pencils
8 = 여덟 yeodeol	house	-채 chae	여덟 채 yeodeol chae eight houses
9 = 아홉 ahop	dish	-그릇 geuleus	아홉 그릇 ahop geuleus nine dishes
10 = 열 yeol	animal	-마리 mari	열 마리 yeol mari ten animals

## 있어요 = There Is/There Are . . .

있어요 (isseoyo) is a common phrase in Korean, somewhat equivalent to "there is/there are" in English. This expression is frequently used in daily conversation in Korean, especially in stores. Both "Do you have . . .?" and "I have . . ." expressions will take 있어요 at the end. The only difference between the question and the statement in this case is the intonation. When asking the question "Do you have . . .?" you should raise your intonation at the end like you would in English. When answering the question, you should lower the intonation.

Q1. 스웨터 있어요? ↗	Sweteo isseoyo?	Do you have a sweater?
A1. 네, ↘ 있어요.	Ne, isseoyo.	Yes, I have (one).
Q2. 작은 스웨터 ↗ 있어요?	Jageun sweteo isseoyo?	Do you have a smaller sweater?
A2. 네, ↘ 있어요.	Ne, isseoyo.	Yes, I have (one).

The verb 있어요 has three literal meanings: *to have*, *to exist*, and *to be located*. In the usage above, it means "to have," or, literally, "it exists in me." Thus, the verb 있어요 accepts only subjects, and never objects. Many American students who are learning Korean experience a great difficulty in learning this construction. So, it may be helpful to remem-



ber this type of exception with a subject particle as a pattern. Memorize this expression with the subject particles: -이/가 있어요.

### 3G. READING

Read the sales advertisement from a Korean store. Underline the words that you recognize.

이 옷가게에서 안 사시면 다른 옷가게에서도 못 삽니다!! 싸요, 싸!! 여름 옷, 파격적 대 세일!! 자, 여기 이 잘 어울리는 옷들을 많이 많이 사 가세요! 모든 품목 단돈 5000원에 대박 세일!!

I otgageseo an sasimyeon dareun otgageseodo mot samnida!! Ssayo, ssa!! Yeoreum ot, pagyeokjeok dae seil!! Ja, yeogi i jal eoul-rineun otdeuleul mani mani sa gaseyo! Modeun pummok dandon o cheon wone daebak seil!!

*You can't buy in other stores if you don't buy it in this store!! Cheap, cheap!! Summer clothes, sale explosion!! Buy many, many clothes in bulk that suit you well! All items are 5000 won, big blowout sale!!*

#### NEW VOCABULARY

안	an	none, not
사시면	sasimyeon	if not buy
다른	dareun	different
못	mot	cannot
파격적	pagyeokjeok	shocking, explosive, surprising
사세요	saseyo	please buy
모든	modeun	all
품목	pummok	item(s)
단돈	dandon	only this much money
대박	daebak	blowout

### 3H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

#### Made in Korea

From the 1990s through to the early 20th century, we have seen an increase in the amount of merchandise manufactured in China. During

the 1970s and 1980s, however, a great deal of merchandise was imported from Korea, including stuffed animals, children's toys, stationeries, clothes, etc. As a developing country recovering from the Korean War (1950-1953), Korea was able to build major highways, factories, and other facets of their infrastructure in the 1970s and 1980s. After the Korean War, huge manufacturing factories were rapidly erected, creating more employment, and improving the Korean economy overall. Many manufacturing projects were initially supported by the Korean government as an effort to rebuild a nation deeply affected by war. Participants of these projects included Hyundai, Samsung, and LG. Nowadays, more and more Korean manufacturing factories are moving to mainland China, passing on their manufacturing technologies to their Chinese branches. In the meantime, some South Korean companies are building a factory complex in the North Korean region of Gae Seong, located only an hour away from Seoul. This factory project was endorsed by both the South and North Korean governments in 2004 to improve North Korea's economy. These days, South Koreans are more interested in development in industrial technology, bio-industry, luxury cars, and robot technologies.

#### EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

바지가 *bajiga*      비싸요 *bissayo*      옷가게 *otgag*  
잘 어울려요 *jal eoulyeoyo*      얼마예요 *eolmayeyo*

A. 여기 이, \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 에서 세일을 해요. 가 봐요.

B. 어, 실은 저도 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 필요한데.

A. 그러세요? 그럼 같이 가요. 이거 어때요?

B. 아, \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ !

A. 감사합니다. 이거 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

C. 38000원 입니다.

A. 어머, 너무 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ !

B. Circle the appropriate form of the object particle.

1. 이 스웨터 (을/를) 좀 보겠어요.

2. 이 바지는 가격(이/가) 얼마예요?

3. 저 색깔(이/가) 아주 잘 어울려요.

4. 이 옷가게(에/에서) 세일을 해요.

5. 네, 그 바지(은/는) 32000원 입니다.

6. 이 색깔(을/를) 주세요.

C. Translate the following Korean sentences into English.

1. 그 바지 한 벌 주세요.
2. 이거 세일 가격이에요.
3. 작은 사이즈 있어요?
4. 저는 스웨터를 좀 볼래요.
5. 그럼 같이 가요.

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.

1. There's a sale (they are having a sale) in here!
2. Ah, is that so?
3. This thing would fit me well.
4. That color suits you.
5. Do you have a bigger size?

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. b) 옷가게 2. a) 스웨터 3. b) 25000원 4. "Sale price" in Korean is 세일 가격. 5. "필요해요" means "is/are necessary."

### Exercises

- A. 1. 옷가게 2. 바지가 3. 잘 어울려요 4. 얼마예요 5. 비싸요  
 B. 1. 를 2. 이 3. 이 4. 에서 5. 는 6. 을  
 C. 1. Give me that pair of pants. 2. This is the sale price. 3. Do you have a smaller size? 4. I will take a look at the sweaters. 5. Then let's go together.  
 D. 1. 여기에서 세일을 해요! 2. 아, 그래요? 3. 이거 저한테 잘 맞았는데요. 4. 그 색깔이 잘 어울려요. 5. 큰 사이즈 있어요?

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Now it's time to bring what you learned from this lesson into your real life! Go over the vocabulary, grammar, and key phrases you learned in this lesson on how to ask prices and how to make some comments on clothes. Find the names of some commodities in Korean using the free Yahoo! web dictionary at <http://kr.dic.yahoo.com/search/all/>. Name ten things that you purchased recently, and make notes in your journal about your purchases, including the item, the price, and anything else you might already be able to express in Korean.

### 1. VOCABULARY (복합어)

이런저런 것들	various things	이런저런 것들
옷가게	clothing store	옷가게
바지	trousers	바지
스웨터	sweater	스웨터
셔츠	shirt	셔츠
가방	bag	가방
신발	shoes	신발
모자	hat	모자
양말	socks	양말
가운	apron	가운
가죽	leather	가죽
가죽 가방	leather bag	가죽 가방
가죽 신발	leather shoes	가죽 신발
가죽 모자	leather hat	가죽 모자
가죽 양말	leather socks	가죽 양말
가죽 가운	leather apron	가죽 가운

### 2. DIALOGUE

가: 안녕하세요. 옷가게예요.	나: 안녕하세요.
가: 바지 한 벌 주세요.	나: 네, 주세요.
가: 얼마예요?	나: 25,000원이에요.
가: 저한테 잘 어울려요.	나: 네, 맞아요.
가: 그럼 같이 가요.	나: 네, 좋아요.

# LESSON

# 4

## 은지의 하루

## Eunji's Day

In this lesson, you will learn vocabulary about everyday activities and the daily routine. You will also learn expressions relating to daily life and activities, including the expressions for days of the week and the use of "from/to" expressions. You will learn how to ask for the time and answer appropriately. Let's get started with some vocabulary!

### 4A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

어떻게 지내요?	Eotteoke jinaeyo?	<i>How are you spending time?</i>
매일	maeil	<i>every day</i>
월요일	wolyoil	<i>Monday</i>
몇 시...?	Myeot si...?	<i>What time...?</i>
퇴근이에요	toegeuniyeyo	<i>(I) get off work</i>
대학원 생활	daehagwon saenghwal	<i>graduate school life</i>
도서관하고 연구실	doseoguanhago yeongusil	<i>library and lab</i>
꽃가게	kkotgage	<i>flower shop</i>
배달을 해요	baedaleul haeyo	<i>(I) make deliveries</i>

### 4B. DIALOGUE

Minho and Eunji are sitting on the terrace of a coffee shop after shopping.

민호: 은지씨, 매일 바빠요? 주중에 어떻게 지내요?

Minho: Eunjissi, maeil bappayo? Jujunge eotteoke jinaeyo?



은지: 네, 월요일부터 금요일까지 일해요.  
 Eunji: Ne, wolyoilbuteo geumyoilkkaji ilhaeyo.  
 민호: 몇 시부터 몇 시까지 일해요?  
 Minho: Myeot sibuteo myeot sikkaji ilhaeyo?  
 은지: 아침 여덟 시 반부터 다섯 시까지 일해요.  
 Eunji: Achim yeodeol si banbuteo daseot sikkaji ilhaeyo.  
 민호: 회사는 어디에 있어요?  
 Minho: Hoesaneun eodie isseoyo?  
 은지: 회사는 종로 3가에 있어요. 지하철로 회사에 가요.  
 Eunji: Hoesaneun Jongno samgae isseoyo. Jihacheolro hoesae gayo.  
 민호: 저도 매일 학교에 가요. 그런데 생각보다 대학원 생활이 어려워요.  
 Minho: Jeodo maeil hakgyoe gayo. Geureonde saenggakboda daehagwon saenghuali eoryeowoyo.  
 은지: 매일 가요? 어디에서 공부해요?  
 Eunji: Maeil gayo? Eodieseo gongbuhaeyo?  
 민호: 학교 도서관하고 연구실에서요.  
 Minho: Hakgyo doseoguanhago yeongusileseoyo.  
 은지: 주말에는 뭐해요?  
 Eunji: Jumaleneun mweohaeyo?  
 민호: 주말에도 일해요. 토요일하고 일요일에 꽃가게에서 배달을 해요.  
 Minho: Jumaledo ilhaeyo. Toyoilhago ilyoile kkotgageeseo baedaleul haeyo.  
 은지: 저는 목요일 밤에는 살사 댄스 수업에 가요.  
 Eunji: Jeoneun mogyoil bameneun salsa daenseu sueobe gayo.  
 민호: 살사요? 와, 재미있겠어요!  
 Minho: Salsayo? Wa, jaemiitketteyo!  
 은지: 그런데 무슨 공부를 해요?

Eunji: Geuleonde museum gongbuleul haeyo?  
 민호: 네, 전자 공학이요.  
 Minho: Ne, jeonja gonghagiyo.  
 Minho: *Eunji, are you busy every day? How are you spending time during the weekdays?*  
 Eunji: *Well, I work from Monday to Friday.*  
 Minho: *From when to when do you work?*  
 Eunji: *I go to work at eight thirty in the morning. And I get off work at five.*  
 Minho: *Where is your company?*  
 Eunji: *My company is at Jongno 3ga. I go to work by subway.*  
 Minho: *I also go to school every day. By the way, graduate school life is harder than I thought.*  
 Eunji: *Do you go every day? Where do you study?*  
 Minho: *In the school library and the lab.*  
 Eunji: *What do you do on weekends?*  
 Minho: *I work on weekends. I make deliveries for the flower shop on Saturday and Sunday.*  
 Eunji: *I go to salsa dancing class on Thursday night.*  
 Minho: *Salsa dancing? Wow, that must be interesting!*  
 Eunji: *By the way, what do you study?*  
 Minho: *Oh, it's electrical engineering.*

### Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- Where does Eunji go on Thursday nights?  
 a) 학교                      b) 전자 공학                      c) 댄스
- Where does Minho go every day?  
 a) 대학원                      b) 회사                      c) 꽃가게
- What time does Eunji get to work?  
 a) 8:20 a.m.                      b) 8:30 a.m.                      c) 9:00 a.m.

4. 매일 means \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 도서관 means \_\_\_\_\_.

### 4C. VOCABULARY

매일	maeil	every day
주중에	jujunge	during weekdays
지내오 (지내다)	jinaeyo	to spend time
월요일	Wolyoil	Monday
금요일	Geumyoil	Friday
-부터	-buteo	from
-까지	-kkaji	to
로	ro	by
몇 시...?	Myoet si...?	What time...?
아침	achim	morning, breakfast
저녁/저녁식사	jeonyeok/ jeonyeokshigsa	evening/supper (dinner)
점심/점심시간	jeomshim/ jeomshimshigan	lunch/lunchtime
여덟시 반	yeodeolsi ban	eight thirty
퇴근이에요	toegeunieyo	off of work
종로 3가	Jongno samga	Jongno 3ga (the central business area of Seoul)
생각보다... 어려워요 (어렵다)	saenggakboda... eoryeowoyo	... is harder than I thought
대학원 생활	daehagwon saenghwal	graduate school life
도서관	doseoguan	library
-하고	-hago	and (between nouns)
연구실	yeongusil	laboratory
꽃가게	kkotgage	flower shop
배달	baedal	delivery
목요일	Mogyoil	Thursday
밤	bam	nighttime

댄스 수업	daenseu sueop	dance class
전자공학	jeonjagonghak	electrical engineering
로	ro	by/by means of
주말	jumal	weekend
지하철	jihacheol	subway

### 4D. KEY PHRASES

Let's take a look at some other interesting expressions that are useful for describing daily activities. Various expressions introduced here will help you to communicate your actions throughout the day.

일어나요	ileonayo	(I) get up
샤워해요	shawohaeyo	(I) shower
밥 먹어요	bap meogeoyo	(I) eat (meals)
운동해요	undonghaeyo	(I) exercise
수업에 가요	sueobe gayo	(I) go to class
집에 가요	jibe gayo	(I) go home
친구를 만나요	chinguleul mannayo	(I) meet a friend
시장봐요	sijangboayo	(I) go grocery shopping
은행에 가요	eunhaenge gayo	(I) go to the bank
요리해요	yorihayeo	(I) cook
TV봐요	TVboayo	(I) watch TV
잠자요	jamjayo	(I) sleep

### 4E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

On first meeting someone in the United States, it is not likely you would ask a person's age, his or her marital status, or the amount of someone's household income. Some of these "taboo" questions, however, are quite commonly asked among Koreans. For example, asking about a person's marital status is quite common in Korea, even on first meeting. Koreans also ask one's age quite often from the beginning. It is not that they are trying to be rude; Koreans ask these questions to decide which form of speech to use. Whether to use a polite form or a non-polite form depends on your age; thus, the questions.

## 4 F. GRAMMAR

### Expressing "And": N하고 N; S고 S

-하고 is used in between two nouns to mean "and." While the English "and" is used in between the nouns or in between clauses in a sentence, the Korean -하고 is used only in between nouns. Between two clauses, use -고 instead. The first clause should drop the sentence ending before adding -고.

N하고 N	N-hago N	and (between nouns)
S고 S	S-go S	and (between sentences)

Let's look at some examples of the use of -하고. The following examples show how -하고 is attached to the first noun.

학교 <b>하고</b> 회사	hakgyohago hoesa	school and work
은지 <b>하고</b> 민호	Eunjihago Minho	Eunji and Minho
버스 <b>하고</b> 지하철	beoseuhago jihacheol	bus and subway

Now, let's look at some examples of -고.

일어나고 샤워해요.	Ileonago shawohaeyo.	(I) get up and (I) shower.
꽃가게에서 일하고 공부해요.	Kkotgageeseo ilhago gongbuhaeyo.	(I) work at the flower shop and (I) study.
친구를 만나고 집에 가요.	Chinguleul mannago jibe gayo.	(I) meet my friends and (I) go home.

Notice how the ending of the first clause is consistently dropped. You will only use a verb ending for the second clause of the sentence.

### Postposition -도

A postposition is usually placed at the end of the noun form, ascribing a particular meaning to the attached noun. Sometimes it is attached to an adverb. We observed this kind of formation from the introduction of the grammatical particles in Lessons 1, 2, and 3. As we have already learned, grammatical particles indicate a particular relationship of the attached noun to other words in the sentence. Postpositions act similarly to these particles, except that the postpositions carry an extra meaning. Topic particles, subject particles, object particles, and location particles merely mark the function of the attached noun, whereas postpositions add meaning to the attached noun, and don't make any grammatical relations. There are other types of postpositions, but in this lesson, we will introduce a postposition -도 (-do), meaning "also" or "too."

Let's look at the following examples. Notice that the postposition -도 is not accompanied by any subject, topic, or object particles.

민호도 공부해요.	Minhodo gongbuhaeyo.	Minho also studies.
대학원 생활도 해요.	Daehagwon saenghwaldo haeyo.	I also do (live) graduate school life.
영화도 재미있어요.	Yeonghwado jaemiisseoyo.	A movie is fun too.
잘도 간다.	Jaldo ganda.	It also goes well.

### Telling Time

Remember the noun counters from Lesson 3? Telling time uses the same Korean numbers you learned with counters, only now you'll need to use 시 (shi) as a noun counter for hours:

1 o'clock	한 시	han shi
2 o'clock	두 시	du shi
3 o'clock	세 시	se shi
4 o'clock	네 시	ne shi
5 o'clock	다섯 시	daseot shi
6 o'clock	여섯 시	yeoseot shi
7 o'clock	일곱 시	ilgop shi
8 o'clock	여덟 시	yeodeol shi

9 o'clock	아홉 시	ahop shi
10 o'clock	열 시	yeol shi
11 o'clock	열 한 시	yeol han shi
12 o'clock	열 두 시	yeol du shi

Notice here that you've also learned two more numbers: 열 한 (eleven) and 열 두 (twelve).

한 시예요.	Han siyeyo.	<i>It is one o'clock.</i>
열두 시예요.	Yeoldu siyeyo.	<i>It is twelve o'clock.</i>
일곱 시에 은지를 만나요.	Ilgop sie Eunjileul mannayo.	<i>I'm meeting Eunji seven o'clock.</i>

### Asking Time Questions

Answering time-related questions in Korean is actually fairly easy! Basically, to answer any type of questions, repeat the question sentence, omitting the question word (*where, when, who, which, what, how*). The position that used to be filled with the question word will now be occupied with the information that the questioner is looking for. There is no change in word order in Korean as there is in English "do" question formation (e.g., "Do you go to the gym?"). Let's see an example of a time question (*when*) and the answer to the question.

Q: 학교에 언제 가요?	Hakkyoe eonje gayo?	<i>When do you go to school?</i>
A: 학교에 3시에 가요.	Hakkyoe se sie gayo.	<i>I go to school at three.</i>

As you can see, the Korean word 언제 (when) is substituted with the new information: 3시에.

### Days of the Week and Months of the Year

Let's now look at the Korean days of the week.

월요일	Wolyoil	<i>Monday</i>
화요일	Hwayoil	<i>Tuesday</i>
수요일	Suyoil	<i>Wednesday</i>
목요일	Mogyoil	<i>Thursday</i>
금요일	Geumyoil	<i>Friday</i>
토요일	Toyoil	<i>Saturday</i>
일요일	Ilyoil	<i>Sunday</i>

오늘은 목요일이에요.	Oneuleun mogyoilieyo.	<i>Today is Thursday.</i>
내일은 금요일이에요.	Naeileun geumyoilieyo.	<i>Tomorrow is Friday.</i>
어제는 수요일이었어요.*	Eojeneun suyoilieosseoyo.	<i>Yesterday was Wednesday.</i>

\*You will learn this past tense ending in Lesson 7.

Months in Korean use the Sino-Korean counting system (introduced briefly in Lesson 3). Just place the number of the month (January = 1, February = 2, etc.) before 월 (wol).

1월 (일월)	ilwol	<i>January</i>
2월 (이월)	iwol	<i>February</i>
3월 (삼월)	samwol	<i>March</i>
4월 (사월)	sawol	<i>April</i>
5월 (오월)	owol	<i>May</i>
6월 (유월)	yuwol	<i>June</i>
7월 (칠월)	chilwol	<i>July</i>
8월 (팔월)	palwol	<i>August</i>
9월 (구월)	guwol	<i>September</i>
10월 (시월)	siwol	<i>October</i>
11월 (십일월)	sipilwol	<i>November</i>
12월 (십이월)	sipiwol	<i>December</i>

**From/To: -부터/-까지 or -에서/-까지**

The pattern -부터/-까지 or -에서/-까지 is exactly the same as the English expression "from/to." The only difference is the location of the words: 부터 or 에서 follows the departure point, and 까지 follows the destination. 부터 is used more often for time expressions, while 에서 is used mostly for location. The following examples show this order.

집부터 도서관까지 (집에서 도서관까지)	jipbuteo doseoguankkaji (jipeseo doseoguankkaji)	from home to the library
종로 3가부터- 옷가게까지 (종로 3가 에서 옷가게까지)	Jongno samga- buteo otgagekkaji (Jongno samga eseo otgagekkaji)	from Jongno 3ga to the clothing store

-부터/-까지 is also used with time expressions when you want to indicate the starting and the ending point of a specific action.

월요일부터 금요일까지	Wolyoilbuteo Geumyoilkkaji	from Monday to Friday
아침부터 밤까지	achimbuteo bamkkaji	from morning to night

**4G. READING**

This is 민호's timetable for 월요일 (Monday). Circle the particles and mark the postpositions with an X.

민호는 아침 6시에 일어나요. 그리고 아침 6시부터 7시까지 샤워를 하고 밥을 먹어요. 아침 7시에 버스를 타고 신촌에 가요. 신촌에서 다시 버스를 타고 대학원에 가요. 대학원에서 9시부터 12시까지 공부해요. 수업은 2시에 끝나요. 친구와 2시부터 점심을 먹어요.

Minhoneun achim yeoseotsie ileonayo. Geurigo achim yeoseotsibuteo ilgopsikkaji shawoleul hago babeul meogeoyo. Achim ilgopsie beoseuleul tago Shinchone gayo. Shinchoneseo dasi beoseuleul tago daehagwone gayo. Daehagwoneseo ahopsibuteo yeoldusikkaji gongbuhaeyo. Sueobeun dusie kkeutnayo. Chingunga dusibuteo jeomshimeul meogeoyo.

Minho gets up at 6 in the morning. And he takes a shower and eats breakfast from 6 to 7. At 7, he rides the bus to go to Shinchon. From Shinchon, he rides the bus to go to graduate school. In graduate school, he studies from 9 to 12. The class ends at 2. From 2 he eats lunch with his friend.

**NEW VOCABULARY**

끝나요	kkeunnayo	finish
친구	chingu	friend
점심	jeomshim	lunch

**4H. CULTURE TOPIC 2**

Koreans and other Asians, including Chinese, Taiwanese, and Japanese, are reported to sleep for substantially shorter periods than most people in other regions of the world. Common knowledge says that people should sleep an average of eight hours to live a healthy life. However, in a 2005 study by Gallup Research, the average sleeping time of the world's population was only 7.5 hours. In the meantime, 68% of Koreans do not go to bed until around midnight, while 60% of Koreans get up before 7 a.m. It's possible that Koreans go to bed later because of the proliferation of 24-hour convenience stores, PC service rooms, many restaurants, and bars that have become prevalent in their city life. There is also the ever-present Internet use that has affected the life patterns of Koreans. Korean high school students sleep even less, averaging 6 hours due to their intensive schoolwork!

**EXERCISES**

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

주중에 연구실에서요	공학이요 재미있겠네요	퇴근이에요
---------------	----------------	-------

- A. 민호씨, 뭐 공부하세요?
- B. 네, \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. 아, 그래요? 어디에서 공부하세요?
- B. 대학교 도서관과 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_!
- A. 주말에는 뭐하세요?
- B. 주말에는 일해요. 그래서 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 공부해요. 그런데 언제 퇴근하세요?



A. 네, 5시에 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ !

B. 퇴근하고 뭐 하세요?

A. 댄스 수업에 가요!

B. \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ !

B. Circle the appropriate particles or postpositions to fill in the missing part of the following sentences.

1. 지금 어디에서 어디( ) 가요? (도/까지)

2. 아침 여덟 시 반까지 회사( ) 가요. (에/도)

3. 회사( ) 어디에 있어요? (는/은)

4. 대학원 생활( ) 어려워요. (이/가)

5. 저( ) 매일 학교에 가고 점심을 거기에서 먹어요. (도/부터)

6. 토요일( ) 일요일에 꽃가게에 가요. (부터/하고)

C. Translate the following Korean sentences into English.

1. 몇 시부터 몇 시까지 일해요?

2. 목요일은 다섯 시에 퇴근이에요.

3. 주중에는 너무 바빠요.

4. 토요일에는 꽃가게에서 배달을 해요.

5. 월요일 밤에는 댄스 수업에 가요.

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.

1. By the way, the life of a graduate student (graduate life) is harder than I thought.

2. I also go to work every day.

3. I work from nine to five.

4. Where do you work?

5. When do you dance?

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. c) 댄스 2. a) 대학원 3. b) 8:30 a.m. 4. 매일 means "every day."  
5. 도서관 means "a library."

### Exercises

- A. 1. 공학이요 2. 연구실에서요 3. 주중에 4. 퇴근이에요  
5. 재미있겠네요

- B. 1. 까지 2. 에 3. 는 4. 이 5. 도 6. 하고

- C. 1. From when to when do you work? 2. I get off from work at 5 on Thursday. 3. I am so busy during the weekdays. 4. I deliver at the flower shop on Saturday. 5. I go to dance class on Monday.

- D. 1. 그런데 생각보다 대학원 생활이 어려워요. 2. 저도 매일 회사에 가요. 3. 저는 9시부터 5시까지 일해요. 4. 어디에서 일해요? 5. 언제 댄스해요?



지나: 어, 민호! 오래간만이다! 그럼, 잘 지내.  
How is your English?

Gina: Eo, Minho! Olaeganmanida! Geureom, jal jinae. How is your English?

민호: 어, 영어하네? 근데, 한국어도 잘 해?

Minho: Eo, yeongeohane? Geunde, hangugeodo jal hae?

지나: 아니, 아직. 나는 미국에서 왔어. 그래서 잘 못해. 여기 한국에는 지난 달에 왔어.

Gina: Ani, ajik. Naneun migugeseo woasseo. Geuraeseo jal mothae. Yeogi hangugeneun jinan dale wosseo.

민호: 잘 하는데 뭐. 너는 전공이 뭐니?

Minho: Jal haneunde mwo. Neoneun jeongongi mwoni?

지나: (dazzled) “전공” 이 뭐니?

Gina: “Jeongong” i mwoni?

민호: 전공은 “major” 야.

Minho: Jeongongeun “major” ya.

지나: Ah, my “major”! 전공은 생물학.

Gina: Ah, my “major”! Jeongongeun saengmulhak.

민호: 아, 그래? 어느 건물에서 공부해?

Minho: Ah, geurae? Eoneu geonmuleseo gongbuhae?

지나: 나는 C26에서 공부해. 그런데 너는 전공이 뭐니?

Gina: Naneun C ishipyukdongeseo gongbuhae. Geuleonde neoneun jeongongi mwoni?

민호: 공학. 숙제가 너무 많아! 주중에는 매일 공부해야 돼.

Minho: Gonghak. Sukjega neomu mana! Jujungeneun maeil gongbuhaeya due.

지나: 그리고, 주말에는 아직도 그 flower shop 에서 일해?

Gina: Geurigo, jumaleneun ajikdo geu flower shopeseo ilhae?

민호: 아, 지나, “flower shop” 은 “꽃가게.”  
“꽃-가-게”!

Minho: Ah, Gina, “flower shop” eun “kkotgagae.”  
“Kkot-ga-ge”!

지나: 아, “꽃가게”!

Gina: Ah, “kkotgagae”!

Minho: Hey, Gina! Hi! Are you doing well?

Gina: Oh, Minho! Long time no see! Of course I'm doing well. How is your English?

Minho: Ur, are you speaking English? Well, do you speak Korean well too?

Gina: No, not yet. I came from the U.S. So, I'm not that fluent. I arrived here in Korea last month.

Minho: Well, (I think) you speak well. What is your major?

Gina: (dazzled) What is “jeongong”?

Minho: Jeongong is “major.”

Gina: Ah, my “major”! My major is biology.

Minho: Ah, is that so? Which building are you studying in?

Gina: I study in building C26. By the way, what is your major?

Minho: Engineering. We have too much homework! I have to study every day during the week.

Gina: And do you still work in that flower shop on weekends?

Minho: Ah, Gina, “flower shop” is “kkotgagae.” “Kkot-ga-ge”!

Gina: Ah, “kkotgagae”!



**Comprehension Practice**

Answer the questions based on the dialogue.

- Where are Minhø and Gina?  
a) 시청                      b) 대학                      c) 미국
- Who is Minhø meeting?  
a) 친구                      b) 한국어                      c) 은지
- Why is Minhø busy?  
a) 공부가 많아요              b) 전공이 생물학이에요  
c) 꽃가게에서 일해요
- What do you call a "major" in Korean? \_\_\_\_\_
- "한국어" means \_\_\_\_\_.

**5C. VOCABULARY**

잘 지냈어? (지내다)	Jal jinaesseo?	<i>Have you been doing well?</i>
오래간만이다! (이다)	Oraeganmanida!	<i>Long time no see!</i>
잘 지냈지. (지내다)	Jal jinaetji.	<i>I have been doing well. (non-polite)</i>
영어	yeongeo	<i>English</i>
영어 하네? (하다)	Yeongeo hane?	<i>Do you speak English? (non-polite)</i>
한국어	hangugeo	<i>Korean</i>
잘 하지 (하다)	jal haji	<i>to do/speak well (non-polite)</i>
미국	miguk	<i>U.S.</i>
왔어 (오다)	woasseo	<i>came (non-polite)</i>
그래서	geuraeseo	<i>therefore, thus</i>
지난	jinan	<i>last, past</i>
달	dal	<i>(duration of) month</i>
잘 하는데 뭐. (하다)	Jal haneunde mwo.	<i>I think you do it well. (conventional courteous expression between friends)</i>

너	neo	<i>you (non-polite)</i>
전공	jeongong	<i>major</i>
뭐니... ?	Mwoni ... ?	<i>What is ...? (non-polite)</i>
생물학	saengmulhak	<i>biology</i>
-이지	-iji	<i>non-polite ending, giving a background</i>
어느	eoneu	<i>which</i>
건물	geonmul	<i>building</i>
-동	-dong	<i>address of a building, noun counter of buildings</i>
응	eung	<i>yeah (non-polite)</i>
숙제	sukje	<i>homework</i>
아직도	ajikdo	<i>yet</i>
일해? (일하다)	Ilhae?	<i>(Do you) work? (non-polite)</i>

**5D. KEY PHRASES**

The following vocabulary includes some school subjects and other expressions you'll frequently encounter in school.

영문학	yeongmunhak	<i>English literature</i>
국문학	gungmunhak	<i>Korean literature</i>
불문학	bulmunhak	<i>French literature</i>
수학	suhak	<i>mathematics</i>
과학	goahak	<i>science</i>
화학	hoahak	<i>chemistry</i>
사회학	sahoehak	<i>sociology</i>
역사학	yeoksahak	<i>history</i>
고고학	gogohak	<i>archaeology</i>
컴퓨터 공학	keompyuteo gonghak	<i>computer engineering</i>
의학	uihak	<i>medical studies</i>

음악	eumak	music
정보과학	jeongboguahak	information science
내일 시험이 있어요.	Naeil siheomi isseoyo.	I have an exam tomorrow.
이제 곧 방학이에요.	Ije got banghagieyo.	Soon it'll be vacation.
이번 학기에 좀 바빠요.	Ibeon hakgie jom bappayo.	I am a bit busy this semester.
2시에 교수님을 만나요.	Du sie gyosunimeul mannayo.	I am meeting my professor at 2.
강의실이 어디예요?	Ganguisili eodiyeyo?	Where is the lecture room?

## 5E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Popular majors in Korean colleges are traditionally medicine (의학), law (법학), and education (교육학), the latter especially popular with female students. Many students are inspired to major in biology (생물학), with the specific aim of studying genetics (유전공학). Genetics and chemistry (화학)—along with the ever-popular engineering (공학)—are majors that many students seek out and are all a necessary part of Korean industry. Korean high school students know that those majors will be important to them in the future and begin expressing interest in them early on. Similarly, entertainment-related majors, such as film studies (영화학), theatrical performance (연기학), and management (경영학), have also become popular recently due to the growth of the Korean entertainment market through globalization.

## 5F. GRAMMAR

### Non-polite Expressions

Let's review polite and non-polite expressions and look more carefully at the distinctions between the two. This is an important part of Korean grammar, and it can be tricky for English speakers, who are not used to hearing these endings. Therefore, it's important to reinforce your understanding of these endings to gain a better grasp of Korean.

Polite expressions are used with a person who is

- (1) older than you;
- (2) respected in society;
- (3) a stranger;
- (4) of a higher social status.

Non-polite expressions are used with a person who is

- (1) close to you;
- (2) younger than you;
- (3) acquainted with you and identified as being of the same age.

One thing to note is that the term “non-polite expression” does not mean “rude expression.” In other words, a non-polite form is different from an impolite expression. The non-polite form is used when you feel very close to a person, to release a possible tension between two speakers and create friendliness. If someone is older than you, but an acquaintance, such as a big sister or a big brother, you can use a non-polite expression because you are family. Following the same logic, non-polite expressions can be occasionally used in work relationships after you have taken some time to get to know a colleague or business partner. Fundamentally, polite expressions mark a distant relationship and the non-intimate nature of their professionalism.

Polite and non-polite expressions are chiefly distinguished by their sentence ending. Attaching -요 to a verb would make a polite expressions.

VERB BASE	POLITE	NON-POLITE
가다 gada (to go)	가요 gayo	가 ga
공부하다 gongbuhada (to study)	공부해요 gongbuhaeyo	공부해 gongbuhae
먹다 meokda (to eat)	먹어요 meogeoyo	먹어 meogeo

You can see here how the polite ending is -어/아요 attached at the end of the verbal expressions. But politeness is also marked by -요 in noun expressions:

NOUN	POLITE	NON-POLITE
공부 gongbu (study)	공부요 gongbuyo	공부 gongbu
민호 Minho (Minho, a person's name)	민호요 Minhoyo	민호 Minho

### Non-polite Question Ending -니

In the main text, you observed two new non-polite endings: -니 (ni) and -야 (ya). Let's look at the question ending, -니 (ni), first. -니 (ni) is used

between friends when the speaker asks a question.

#### EXAMPLE OF NON-POLITE QUESTION ENDING -니

어디 가니?	Eodi gani?	Where are you going?
점심 먹니?	Jeomshim meokni?	Are you eating lunch?
집에서 오니?	Jibeseo oni?	Are you coming from home?

#### Non-polite Background Ending -야

-야 (ya) is used when the speaker has a comment, expresses an opinion, or is giving background information. -야 (ya) is only used after a vowel sound; if the sentence ends in a consonant, use -오야 (iya).

#### EXAMPLE OF NON-POLITE BACKGROUND ENDING -야

여기가 집이야.	Yeogiga jibiya.	Here is home.
여기는 민호야.	Yeogineon Minhoya.	Here is Minho.
저기는 시청역이야.	Jeogineun Shicheongyeogiya.	Over there is Sicheong (city hall) station.

#### Polite Question Ending -세요

There is a polite equivalent to -니 (ni). The ending -세요 (seyo) is used as a polite question ending, used for those who are older or superior to you.

지금 가세요?	Jigeum gaseyo?	Are you going now?
언제 가세요?	Eonje gaseyo?	When are you going?
집에 가세요?	Jipe gaseyo?	Are you going home?

#### Pronouns

Korean pronouns also have polite and non-polite distinctions. In Korean, pronouns are often omitted, especially where they can be easily inferred.

1ST PERSON	POLITE	NON-POLITE
I	저 jeo*	나 na
we	저희(들) jeohui (deul)	우리(들) uri (deul)

\* With the subject particle 이/가, the form is modified to 제 (저+가=제가).

The plural forms of 우리 (우리들) and 저희 (저희들) are optional.

3RD PERSON	POLITE	NON-POLITE
he	그분 geubun	그, 그이 geu(i)
she	그분 geubun	그 (녀) geu (nyeo)
they	그분들 geubundeul	그들 geudeul

The Korean language is insensitive to grammatical gender distinctions, so for "she," Koreans use both 그 (geu) and 그녀 (geunyeo). (녀 means "woman.") We saw 그 in Lesson 2, where we learned it as the demonstrative meaning "that." The pronoun 그 sounds the same, but here it means "he" or "she."

The second person pronoun system in Korean is interesting. Both the pronouns 너 (neo) and 너희 (neohui) are straightforward for non-polite expressions. For polite expressions, the second person pronoun needs a bit more explanation. It is rude to call older people by their names directly in Korean culture, so Koreans try to avoid calling older people directly by name. Instead, either they call the person by his or her title, such as "Dr." or "Prof.," or 선생님 ("teacher") as a general calling term. This title-calling practice is inherited from the Confucian culture brought from China, and still remains the standard in Korean society.

2ND PERSON	POLITE	NON-POLITE
<i>you (sing.)</i>	선생님 seonsaengnim 사모님 samonim <i>Or, name + -씨 (ssi)</i>	너 neo
<i>you (pl.)</i>	여러분 yeoreobun	너희 neohui (deul)

### Expressing "Have To"

The expression "to have to" in Korean is formed using the pattern -어/아야 돼요 (eo/aya duaeyo) added to the verb stem. The choice among these two forms is made depending on the preceding sound. If the preceding sound (e.g., verb root) ends with a dark vowel (우, 어, 으, 이, 외) in the last syllable, you need to use -어야 돼요.

If the preceding sound (e.g., verb root) ends with a bright vowel (아, 오) in the last syllable, you need to use -아야 돼요. These rules of choosing a grammatical form depending on the quality of a preceding vowel are called "vowel harmony" in Korean.

있- (vowel 이) 있 + 어야	it-	<i>to be (to exist, to have)</i>
같- (vowel 아) 같 + 아야	gat-	<i>to be the same</i>
가- (vowel 아) 가 + 야	ga-	<i>to go</i>
먹- (vowel 어) 먹 + 어야	meok-	<i>to eat</i>
일하- (irregular, vowel 애) 일해야	ilha-	<i>to work</i>

+ 어/아야 돼요	-eo/aya duaeyo	<i>have to</i>
-----------	----------------	----------------

있어야 돼요 ...	Isseoya duaeyo ...	<i>I have to have ...</i>
같아야 돼요.	Gataya duaeyo.	<i>It has to be the same.</i>
가야 돼요.	Gaya duaeyo.	<i>(I) have to go.</i>
먹어야 돼요.	Meogeoya duaeyo.	<i>(I) have to eat.</i>
일해야 돼요.*	Ilhaeya duaeyo.	<i>(I) have to work.</i>

\*하다 is irregular; it follows 해야 돼요.

Many Korean words are clustered together to form patterns, so remembering these patterns is key to becoming fluent in Korean!

### 5G. READING

The chart is a college major chart provided by Seoul National University. Which majors do you recognize? Circle the ones that are familiar.

과	gua	정원
법학과	beophakgua	106명
영문과	yeoungmungua	25명
국문과	kukmungua	25명
수학과	suhakgua	30명
교육학과	gyoyukhakgua	66명
한문학과	hanmunhakgua	15명
컴퓨터공학과	keompyuteogong-hakgua	100명
기계공학과	gigyegonghakgua	55명
음악과	eumakgua	10명
기악과	giakgua	15명
의학과	euihakgua	200명
생물학과	saengmulhakgua	40명
화학과	hoahakgua	25명
심리학과	shimrihakgua	25명

## 5H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

## Korean Educational System

The Korean school system does not provide kindergarten education for free, so parents have to pay for education until the child becomes six or seven years old. Some parents are enthusiastic about their children's early education, and are thus willing to pay expensive tuition to a Catholic kindergarten school or a school with a progressive education program. Most Korean children will go to elementary school by the age of seven. Elementary education lasts six years, after which children move on to middle school and high school. Middle school and high school in Korea are three years each, so a student is seventeen or eighteen when he or she graduates from high school. Many high school students these days want to go to college, so the competition for college matriculation is very high, especially for the good colleges that are guaranteed to educate a promising young work force. The most highly revered universities are Seoul National University, Yonsei University, Ehwa Womans University, and Korea University. Seoul National University is famous for its top academic achievements, whereas Yonsei and Ehwa were founded by missionaries from the U.S. and are continuously developing their foundations in international communication. Korea University was founded by a patriot in the late Chosun Dynasty (조선 왕조) who believed that patriot Koreans should take part in Korean education. These universities are the center of the development and modernity in Korea.

## EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

그런데      저는      전공      많이      어때요

A. 저는 미국에서 왔어요.

B. 아, 미국! \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 한국 사람이예요. 그런데, 지나씨, 무슨 공부하세요?

A. 저는 대학원에서 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 이 생물학이예요.

B. 그럼 공부를 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 해야 되겠어요.

A. 네. 좀 많이 해요.

B. 숙제는 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

A. 숙제도 정말 많아요. 매일 공부해요.

B. \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_, 지나씨, 한국이 어때요?

A. 실은 참 재미있어요. 사람들이 아주 좋아요.

B. Match the first expression with the correct verb to complete the sentence.

- |                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| 1. 영어를 잘        | a. 지냈어. |
| 2. 아직도 그 꽃가게에서  | b. 일해.  |
| 3. 매일 공부해야      | c. 이에요. |
| 4. 저는 전자공학학과 학생 | d. 돼.   |
| 5. 야아, 오랜만이다, 잘 | e. 해요.  |

C. Translate the following sentences into Korean.

- Wow, you speak Korean so well!
- I speak Korean a little.
- No, not yet.
- Long time no see!
- What is your major?

D. Provide the missing particle where the parentheses indicate.

- 아직도 그 꽃가게(      ) 일해?
- 지나는 미국(      ) 왔어.
- 숙제(      ) 너무 많아!
- 지난 달 (      ) 이번 달까지 공부해야 돼.
- 나(      ) 주로 주말에 일해.

## ANSWER KEY

## Comprehension Practice

- b) 대학 2. a) 친구 3. a) 공부가 많아요 4. "Major" is 전공.
- "한국어" means "Korean."

## Exercises

- A. 1. 저는 2. 전공 3. 많이 4. 많아요 5. 그런데
- B. 1. e 2. b 3. d 4. c 5. a
- C. 1. 한국말 잘 하시는데요! 2. 한국어 조금 해요.  
3. 아니, 아직. 4. 오랜만이다! 5. 전공이 뭐예요?
- D. 1. 에서 2. 에서 3. 가/는/도 4. 부터 5. 는/도



## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Let's continue your journal with some newly learned expressions and words from this lesson. Review the lesson and previous lessons, and create possible questions that you can ask your friend. So far, we have learned how to ask "what," "where," and "when." Create a pair of questions for each of these question words, and imagine how you might answer these questions if you are asked. Use as many school related terms as you can to review the content of this lesson. Make sure you use all of the Hangeul you have learned so far. Starting with the next lesson, you will no longer have the help of romanized transliterations, so it's important to make sure you've had plenty of practice with the writing system!

## LESSON

# 6

이메일 좀 보내 주세요!

Please Send Me an E-mail!

In this lesson, we'll introduce some computer-related topics. You will learn computer and Internet terms, some conventional idioms, how to speak about events in the future, and how to make sentences negative. Let's get started with a vocabulary warm-up!

### 6A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

왜요?	<i>Why?</i>
안 돼요?	<i>It doesn't work?</i>
좀 봐 주세요.	<i>Please take a look at it.</i>
이상해요.	<i>It's strange.</i>
정말 말썽이에요.	<i>It's really a headache.</i>
웹사이트 업데이트	<i>website update</i>
아, 깜빡했네!	<i>Ah, I completely forgot!</i>
데이트하고 있어요.	<i>I am dating.</i>

### 6B. DIALOGUE

Eunji and Gicheol are colleagues at a busy office in Seoul.

은지: 기철씨, 바빠요?

기철: 네, 좀. 왜요?

은지: 여기 이 프로그램 좀 봐 주시겠어요? 좀 이상해요.

기철: 또 안 돼요? 왜 그럴까.

은지: 제 워드 프로세서가 정말 말썽이에요. 그리고 스프레드 시트도요.

기철: 한국 소프트, 이거 정말 안 되겠는데.

- 은지: 그리고 지난 번 웹 사이트 업데이트는 어때요?  
 기철: 앗! 웹 사이트요?  
 은지: 아직도요? 그럼, 지난 번 피디에프 파일 서류는요?  
 기철: 무슨 파일이요?  
 은지: 한국 닷컴하고 넷 메일 파일이요.  
 기철: 아, 깜빡했네! 그거 다시 볼게요.  
 은지: 어휴, 참! 기철씨, 요즘 무슨 좋은 일 있었어요?  
 기철: 히히. 네, 사실은 요즘 예쁜 컴퓨터 프로그래머하고 데이트해요.  
 은지: 그럼 그렇지!

**Eunji:** *Gicheol, are you busy?*

**Gicheol:** *Yes, a bit. Why?*

**Eunji:** *Would you please take a look at this program?  
It's a little bit strange.*

**Gicheol:** *It's not working again? I wonder why.*

**Eunji:** *My word processor is a real headache. And the spreadsheet too.*

**Gicheol:** *Hanguksoft, it can't be.*

**Eunji:** *And what about the website update (that I requested) last time?*

**Gicheol:** *Ahh! Website?*

**Eunji:** *Not yet? Then what about the PDF document from last time?*

**Gicheol:** *What file?*

**Eunji:** *The Korea.com and Net Mail files.*

**Gicheol:** *Ah, I completely forgot! I will take a look again.*

**Eunji:** *Argh! Gicheol, is something good happening with you these days?*

**Gicheol:** *Heh heh. Yes, actually I'm dating a pretty computer programmer these days.*

**Eunji:** *That's why!*

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the questions based on the dialogue.

- Who is Gicheol dating these days?  
a) 은지                      b) 프로그래머                      c) 민호
- What is not working?  
a) 웹사이트                      b) 워드 프로그램                      c) 야후 코리아
- What was sent to Gicheol last time?  
a) 엑셀                      b) 웹사이트                      c) 넷 메일 파일
- 파일 means \_\_\_\_\_.
- 깜빡했네 means \_\_\_\_\_.

## 6C. VOCABULARY

프로그램	program
좀 봐 주세요. (보다)	Please take a look.
좀 이상해요. (이상하다)	It's a bit strange.
좀	a little/a bit
안 돼요? (안 되다)	Is it not working?
왜 그럴까. (그렇다)	I wonder why.
말생이에요 (말생이다)	troublesome
엑셀	Excel (computer program)
이거 정말 안 되겠는데.	It can't be. (an expression said to yourself about something troublesome)
웹사이트	website
업데이트	update
피디에프 파일	PDF file
보낸 (보내다)	sent (adj.)
서류	document
깜빡했네 (깜빡하다)	I completely forgot!
다시	again
볼게요. (보다)	I will take a look.
어휴, 참!	Argh! (an exclamation for when you confront something absurd or outrageous)

예쁜 (예쁘다)	<i>to be pretty</i>
프로그래머	<i>programmer</i>
데이트	<i>date</i>
그럼 그렇지!	<i>That's why! (excl., used when your assumption turned out to be right)</i>
아니요	<i>no/not</i>

## 6D. KEY PHRASES

The following vocabulary features some common vocabulary related to computers and the Internet.

컴퓨터 끄세요.	<i>Turn off the computer, please.</i>
화면 보세요.	<i>Look at the screen, please.</i>
커서가 안 움직여요.	<i>My cursor is not moving.</i>
컴퓨터가 고장났어요.	<i>My computer is out of order.</i>
프린터가 안 돼요.	<i>My printer is not working.</i>
워드 밖에 몰라요.	<i>I only know Word.</i>
이메일 보내주세요.	<i>Send me an e-mail, please.</i>
노트북 있으세요?	<i>Do you have a notebook?</i>
서치 엔진 뭐 쓰세요?	<i>Which search engine do you use?</i>
구글 써요.	<i>I use Google.</i>
컴퓨터 잘 하세요?	<i>Are you good with computers?</i>
저는 컴퓨터는 많이 몰라요.	<i>I don't know a lot about computers.</i>
웹사이트 만들었어요.	<i>I designed my website.</i>
어제 접속했어요?	<i>Did you connect to the Internet (chat room) yesterday?</i>

## 6E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

To English speakers, Korean computer jargon can be easy and difficult at the same time. Most computer-related terms are English loan words throughout the world, but the pronunciation of the computer jargon in Korean is radically different. Among all Korean sounds, Korean does not have [f], [r], [z], and [ð]. So these sounds are substituted with other available sounds in the Korean phoneme system that have the closest pronunciation. For example, [f] is replaced by [p] (프렌드, "friend"), and

[r] is replaced by [l] or a sound between [r] and [l] (러닝, "running"). There are some sound combinations in English that are impossible in Korean. For example, there is no curly [r] sound at the end of a Korean word. This means, you have to imagine the sound of "computer" without [r] sound at the end. So, because of the sound coding discrepancies between the two languages, it is not always easy to distinguish all of the English loan words in Korean speech. However, as you hear more and more examples, you'll get used to recognizing this sound translation system.

## 6F. GRAMMAR

### Future Tense 1: First Person Intentional Future Tense

#### -ㄹ게요/올게요

In this lesson, we will learn two types of future tenses: the first person intentional future tense -ㄹ게요 and the conjecture 겠. These two future tenses are frequently used in Korean speech. Let's take a look at the first person intentional future tense first.

The form -ㄹ게요 is used when expressing the speaker's intended future action (*I will...*). In the main dialogue, you saw the word 볼게요. This is an example of how the future tense is formed in Korean, but this expression takes only the first person (*I, we*) as the subject of the sentence. The future marker -ㄹ게/올게 is attached in between the end of a verb and the sentence ending.

FUTURE TENSE FORMATION	EXAMPLES
Verb 가 (to go) + ㄹ게 (future tense) + 요 (sentence ending) = 갈게요	제가 갈게요. <i>I'll go.</i>
Verb 있 (to be there) + 올게 (future tense) + 요 (sentence ending) = 있을게요	제가 집에 있을게요. <i>I'll be there at home.</i>

ㄹ and 올 alternate in the future tense depending on whether the preceding sound is a consonant or a vowel. 올 follows consonants and reflects the insertion of a dummy vowel "으" combined with the future marker "ㄹ." Consonant clusters are usually avoided in Korean, and the Korean sound is usually chained into a consonant-vowel-consonant-vowel (C-V-C-V) pattern.

## Future Tense 2: Conjecture -겠

We just learned one way to form the future tense, -ㄹ/을 게요, which expresses one's own intentional action in the future. The second way to form a future tense is using 겠. 겠 is placed after a verb stem and before a sentence ending, marking a conjectural event. This form tends to be used in a situation where it is rather formal. Look at the following chart to compare the two forms of the future tense:

FIRST PERSON INTENTIONAL ACTION FUTURE TENSE ㄹ/을 게요	CONJECTURE -겠어요
1a) 저는 일 할게요. <i>I'll work. (informal)</i>	1b) 저는 일하겠어요. <i>I will work. (formal)</i>
2a) 제가 집에 있을게요. <i>I'll be there at home.</i>	2b) 제가 집에 있겠어요. <i>I will be there at home. (formal)</i>

The distinction between these two forms does not differ greatly except the first person future tense -ㄹ게요 is used only with the first person subject. The conjecture future can also be used with other persons.

민호씨한테 정말  
이상하겠어요.

*It would be strange to  
you, Minho.*

The conjecture -겠 injects a sense of formality into your speech, thus -겠 is often used when you address your boss, professors, or elderly people. In other words, you will often choose 겠어요 or 겠습니다 when describing future events to show some respect to your superiors or elders. In comparing these two expressions, the expression 겠습니다 is a more polite expression because the ending -습니다 is a formal and polite ending. -습니다 is usually used with higher-up people at work with whom you might not be familiar, or in public venues.

### Negations

There are two ways to form negation in Korean. One is called *short negation* and the other is called *long negation*. The short negation is fairly easy: Place the negative element 안 (*not*) in front of the verb.

SHORT NEGATION	EXAMPLE
안 + verb + ending	안 가요 ( <i>I don't go</i> )

Long negation uses the pattern “verb stem + 지 않.” Because -지 않 elongates the end of the verbal structure, it is called long negation. Notice that there is a space between -지 and 않. Short negation tends to be used in children's speech or simpler expressions in adult speech, while long negation is used mostly in adult speech or in rather complicated expressions. Long negation is more formal, so it is also commonly used in documentation and literary writing.

LONG NEGATION	EXAMPLE
verb + 지 않 + ending	가지 않아요 ( <i>I don't go</i> )

It is also important to note that in many cases, the subject particle -이/가 tends to change to -은/는 when a sentence becomes negative.

지나가 생물학을 전공해요.	<i>Gina majors in biology.</i>
지나는 생물학을 전공하지 않아요.	<i>Gina doesn't major in biology.</i>

### Possessive Pronouns

Let's take a look at how to form possessive expressions in Korean. You came across possessive pronouns briefly in this and the previous lesson. To form the possessive in Korean, add the particle -의 to the end of the noun or pronoun. -의 is comparable to the English preposition “of.” Here is a chart of the possessive pronouns:

	POLITE	NON-POLITE
<i>my</i>	저의/제	나의/내
<i>our</i>	저희(들)의	우리(들)의
<i>his</i>	그분의	그의
<i>her</i>	그분의	그녀의
<i>their</i>	그분들의	그들의
<i>your (sing.)</i>	선생님의/ Name +씨의 (민지씨의)	너의/네
<i>your (pl.)</i>	여러분의	너희(들)의
<i>Minji's</i>	민지씨의	민지의

Notice the contracted forms in first person singular, both polite and non-polite: 제 (저의) and 내 (나의). In the second person, the contracted form is only used in the non-polite: 네 (너의).

These possessive pronouns will always come before the noun being possessed.

민호씨의 컴퓨터	<i>Minho's computer</i>
내 이메일	<i>my e-mail</i>
그(녀)의 웹사이트	<i>her website</i>
그(분)들의 파일	<i>their file</i>

## 6G. READING

Find and circle some English loan words in the following text about computers.

야후 코리아는 한국어 서비스가 가능한 웹 서치 엔진입니다. 이 서비스를 사용하시면 다른 유용한 서치 엔진들과 마찬가지로 쉽게 원하시는 정보를 찾을 수 있습니다. 서치 엔진이란 인터넷 상에 존재하는 여러 웹사이트들을 편리하게 찾는 서비스로서, 전 세계적으로 많은 업체들이 이런 서비스를 무료로 제공하고 있습니다. 대표적인 서비스 업체로서, 구글, 라이코스, 야후, 다음 등이 있습니다.

*Yahoo Korea is a web search engine that is written in the Korean language. If you use this service, you will be able to find information you wanted easily, as well as with other commonly used search engines. A search engine is a convenient service that finds various kinds of websites that exist on the Internet. Throughout the world, many companies provide this service for free. Representative search engines these days are Google, Lycos, Yahoo, and Daum.*

### NEW VOCABULARY

가능한	<i>possible</i>
서치	<i>search</i>
엔진	<i>engine</i>
-면	<i>if...</i>
마찬가지로	<i>as well as</i>
원하시는	<i>wanted</i>
정보	<i>information</i>
-란	<i>it means, it is</i>

-상	<i>on</i>
존재하는	<i>existing</i>
여러	<i>various</i>
편리하게	<i>convenient</i>
찾는	<i>finding</i>
-로서	<i>as</i>
세계적	<i>worldly</i>
업체	<i>business, company</i>
무료	<i>free</i>
제공하	<i>to provide</i>
대표적	<i>representative</i>
등	<i>etc.</i>

## 6H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

### IT Industry Trend in Korea

There are several regions in Korea known for technological innovations in computers. One such area is Teheran Ro (테헤란로), a southeastern region of Seoul where newly built thirty- to forty-story high-rise buildings are busy twenty-four hours a day in the hustle and bustle of the computer business. From the 1990s through the present day, Teheran Ro has often been referred to as Korea's Silicon Valley. Teheran Ro is also famous as one of the newly established main financial districts in Seoul, so the streets are often crowded with many investors and venture capitalists. It is as if Wall Street and Silicon Valley were to spring up together in one place in a metropolitan city. Another similarly technologically enriched area is Daejeon (대전), located two hours outside of Seoul. Daejeon is famous for its research complexes, including major governmental projects. In previous decades, the city was famous for its hot spas and had the traditional look of mid-region Korea. Now Daejeon has been completely transformed in the process of becoming a new center of technological development. Many researchers moved to Daejeon at the same time in the 1990s, and so now one can find an entire district filled with M.A.s and Ph.D.'s who are dedicating their lives to serious technological research in computers, genetics, and robotics.

For more information on Teheran Ro and Daejeon:

<http://www.j-mong.pe.kr/seoul/p-04-09.html>

<http://www.daejeon.go.kr/english/index.jsp>



**EXERCISES**

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

빨리	업데이트	안 돼요	좀	말씀
----	------	------	---	----

- A. 여기 이 프로그램 \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 봐 주세요.  
 B. 왜요?  
 A. 좀 이상해요.  
 B. 또 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 이에요? 지난 번에 고쳤는데...  
 A. 네, 엑셀이 잘 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B. 그런데 지난 번 웹 사이트 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 는 어때요?  
 A. 네? 아, 아직 안 됐어요.  
 B. \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 하세요! 우리는 너무 바빠요!

B. Complete the sentences with the possessives in parentheses.

- 은지씨, 여기 \_\_\_\_\_ 컴퓨터 좀 봐 주세요! (my)
- 야아, 기철아, \_\_\_\_\_ 회사가 바쁘다며! (your)
- \_\_\_\_\_ 친구는 바빠요? (은지씨)
- \_\_\_\_\_ 웹사이트가 생각보다 어려워요. (their)
- 민호씨는 \_\_\_\_\_ 배달을 잘 해요? (flower shop's)

C. Negate the following sentences using the short negation form.

- 컴퓨터가 어려워요.
- 다 됐어요?
- 사실은 지난 주 부터 데이트하고 있어요.
- 바빠요?
- 지난 번에 고쳤어요.

D. Negate the following sentences using the long negation form.

- 지나가 생물학을 전공해요.
- 저는 미국에서 왔어요.
- 숙제가 많아요.
- 우리는 공부해요.
- 꽃가게에서 일해요.

**ANSWER KEY**

**Comprehension Practice**

- b) 프로그래머    2. a) 워드 프로그램    3. c) 넷 메일 파일
4. 파일 means "file."    5. 깜빡했네 means "I completely forgot."

**Exercises**

- A. 1. 좀 2. 말씀 3. 안 돼요 4. 업데이트 5. 빨리
- B. 1. 제 2. 네 3. 은지씨의 4. 그들의 5. 꽃가게의
- C. 1. 컴퓨터가 안 어려워요 2. 다 안 됐어요? 3. 사실은 지난 주 부터 데이트 안 하고 있어요. 4. 안 바빠요? 5. 지난 번에 안 고쳤어요.
- D. 1. 지나가는 생물학을 전공하지 않아요. 2. 저는 미국에서 오지 않았어요. 3. 숙제가 많지 않아요. 4. 우리는 공부하지 않아요. 5. 꽃가게에서 일하지 않아요.

Please Send Me an E-mail: 이메일 좀 보내 주세요!

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

For this independent challenge, practice using possessive pronouns. Use the vocabulary you've learned so far, the glossary, or the web dictionary at <http://dic.impact.pe.kr/> to make lists of items using possessives. If you want to use words for items around your house or family members, you can look at the Key Phrases sections of Lessons 11 and 12, or look up the words in the glossary. Lastly, outline the computer terms that you learned in this lesson. Form possessives for each term and think about how English phonemes are translated into Korean phonemes in these words.

## LESSON

# 7

## 신입 사원

## A New Employee

In this lesson, you will learn expressions that are used in office settings in Korea. We will introduce vocabulary for dates and times, as well as some vocabulary for describing people. You will also learn indirect object formation and ways to express the past tense in Korean.

### 7A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

크리스 씨세요?	<i>Are you Mr. Chris?</i>
같이 일하게 될	<i>will be working together</i>
들었어요	<i>heard</i>
저를 따라 오세요.	<i>Follow me, please.</i>
한국어 하세요?	<i>Do you speak Korean?</i>
배웠어요	<i>(I) learned</i>
사무실	<i>office</i>
왼쪽	<i>left</i>
많이 배우겠습니다.	<i>I will learn a lot.</i>

### 7B. DIALOGUE

Chris is from California and will be starting work at a Korean venture company today. Chris is introduced to Eunji, who works for the company as a graphic designer.

크리스: 안녕하세요?

은지: 오, 안녕하세요? 신입사원 크리스씨? 부장님한테서 말씀을 어제 들었어요.

크리스: 네, 반갑습니다. 저도 은지씨와 같이 일하게 될 거라는 말씀을 들었어요.

은지: 네. 그럼 이제부터 저를 따라 오세요. 한국어 하세요?

크리스: 네, 조금요. LA에서 육 개월 동안 한국어를 배웠어요.

은지: 아, 그래요? 여기가 우리 사무실이에요. 저기 팩스가 있고, 이 옆이 제 책상이에요.

크리스: 은지씨, 제 책상은 어디예요?

은지: 여기 제 왼쪽에 있어요. 이리 오세요.

크리스: 몇 명이 같이 일해요?

은지: 우리 팀은 다섯 명이예요. 팀장은 저기 있는 키가 큰 분이예요.

크리스: 저 머리 긴 분이요?

은지: 아니요, 그 오른 쪽이요. 그리고 저 앞은 같이 일하는 지영씨예요. 크리스씨, 그런데 오늘이 처음이세요?

크리스: 네. 많이 배우겠습니다.

Chris: *How are you doing?*

Eunji: *Oh, how are you doing? Are you the new recruit, Chris? I heard about you yesterday from the head of our department.*

Chris: *Oh, I'm glad to meet you. I heard that I will be working with you too, Eunji.*

Eunji: *Yes, Chris, then follow me from now on. Do you speak Korean?*

Chris: *Yes, a little. I studied Korean in L.A. for six months.*

Eunji: *Ah, is that so? Here is our office. The fax machine is over there, and my desk is on this side.*

Chris: *Eunji, where is my desk?*

Eunji: *Here, it is on my left. Come this way.*

Chris: *How many people work together?*

Eunji: *Our team has five people. The team chief is that tall person over there.*

Chris: *That person with the long hair?*

Eunji: *No, to the right. And there in front is Ji-Young, who works with us. Chris, by the way, is this your first day?*

Chris: *Yes. I will learn a lot (from this work).*

### Comprehension Practice

Answer the questions based on the dialogue.

- Where is Chris from?  
a) 한국                      b) 미국                      c) 캐나다
- How many people are in Eunji's team?  
a) 네 명                      b) 다섯 명                      c) 여섯 명
- Where is Chris going to work?  
a) 팀장 옆                      b) 지영 옆                      c) 은지 옆
- “배웠어요” means \_\_\_\_\_.
- What do you say when you see a new person entering the office?

### 7C. VOCABULARY

신입사원	<i>new recruit</i>
일하다	<i>to work</i>
같이	<i>together</i>
되다	<i>to become</i>
일하게 될 (일하다, 되다)	<i>will work with us</i>
부장님	<i>department head/section chief</i>
말씀	<i>saying/words (hon.)</i>
들었어요 (듣다)	<i>heard (to hear)</i>
-한테	<i>to (someone)</i>
-한테서	<i>from (someone)</i>
따라오세요 (따라오다)	<i>to follow</i>
육 개월 동안	<i>for six months</i>
배웠어요 (배우다)	<i>learned (to learn)</i>
사무실	<i>office</i>
팩스	<i>fax</i>
옆	<i>next</i>
책상	<i>desk</i>

왼쪽	<i>left side</i>
이리 오세요	<i>come this way</i>
팀장	<i>team leader</i>
키가 큰 분	<i>tall person</i>
처음	<i>first time</i>
배우겠습니다 (배우다)	<i>will learn (pol.) (to learn)</i>
머리 긴 분	<i>person with long hair</i>
오른쪽	<i>right side</i>

## 7D. KEY PHRASES

The following expressions are frequently used in the workplace and elsewhere to describe a person. It is useful to know how to describe personal appearances, as Koreans love to make comments that show their friendliness and interest in other people.

머리가 길어요.	<i>I/You/He/She has/have long hair.</i>
머리가 짧아요.	<i>I/You/He/She has/have short hair.</i>
덩치가 커요.	<i>I/You/He/She has/have a large build.</i>
왜소해요.	<i>I/You/He/She am/is/are short and skinny.</i>
검은 눈이에요.	<i>I/You/He/She has/have black-colored eyes.</i>
파란 눈이에요.	<i>I/You/He/She has/have blue eyes.</i>
못 생겼어요.	<i>I/You/He/She am/is/are bad looking.</i>
잘 생겼어요!	<i>(He is) good looking! (compliment about a man)</i>
예뻐요!	<i>(She is) pretty! (compliment about a woman)</i>
키가 커요	<i>tall (person's height)</i>
키가 작아요	<i>short (person's height)</i>
보통 체격이에요	<i>medium build</i>
말랐어요	<i>skinny</i>
뚱뚱해요	<i>chubby</i>
갈색 머리에요	<i>brown-haired</i>

## 7E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Koreans love to comment on their coworkers' appearance! They are curious about a coworker's life, and notice small changes in appearance. This can make a foreigner happy at times, surprised at times, and perhaps even a bit uncomfortable at first. Commenting on coworkers' appearances is probably a more common practice in less professional vocations. Even for Koreans in the professional world, it would be uncomfortable to comment on someone's appearance before getting down to the actual business at hand. Koreans also may ask you whether you are married or not in the first meeting. They may also ask for personal details such as age, where you and your parents were born, what kind of educational degree you have attained, and so on. Be prepared for these intimidating questions, but remember that after dealing with such personal questions, you will likely become friends quite quickly.

## 7F. GRAMMAR

### Past Tense

Simple past tense is expressed with two forms, -었-/-았-, or one contraction, -ㅆ-, attached to the verb root. The choice among these forms is made depending on the preceding sound. If the preceding sound (e.g., verb root) ends with a dark vowel (우, 어, 으, 이, 외) or any other vowel that is neither ㅏ nor ㅑ in the last syllable, you need to choose -었-.

VERB ROOT ENDING WITH DARK VOWELS	PAST TENSE WITH -었-
주다 ( <i>to give</i> )	주었
되다 ( <i>to become</i> )	되었
어울리다 ( <i>to fit</i> )	어울렸 렸 = contraction of 리 + 었
듣다 ( <i>to listen</i> )	들었 들 (ㄷ becomes ㄹ when modifying) + 었
배우다 ( <i>to learn</i> )	배웠 배우 + 었 = 배웠 (vowels 우 and 어 are contracted to 워)
일하다 ( <i>to work</i> )	일했
공부하다 ( <i>to study</i> )	공부했
이상하다 ( <i>to be strange</i> )	이상했

민지가 책을 주었어요.	<i>Minji gave me a book.</i>
옷가게가 되었어요.	<i>It became a clothing store.</i>
그거 잘 어울렸어요.	<i>That thing fit you well.</i>
말씀 많이 들었어요.	<i>I heard a lot about you. (lit., I heard words about you a lot.)</i>
한국어를 많이 배웠어요.	<i>I learned a lot of Korean.</i>
우리는 회사에서 같이 일했어요.	<i>We worked together at the company.</i>

If the preceding sound (e.g., verb root) ends with a bright vowel (아, 오) in the last syllable, you need to choose -았-.

VERB ROOT ENDING WITH BRIGHT VOWELS	PAST TENSE WITH -았-
같다 ( <i>to be the same</i> )	같았
좋다 ( <i>to be good</i> )	좋았

Here are more examples of the past tense with bright vowels:

키가 같았어요.	<i>(They/We are) the same height.</i>
보기에 좋았어요.	<i>It was good to see.</i>

-ㅁ- is a contracted form for verb roots ending in ㅏ or ㅓ.

VERB ROOT	PAST TENSE CONTRACTION -ㅁ-
가다	갔 가 + 았 = 갔 (ㅏ + ㅏ = one ㅏ)
타다	탸 타 + 았 = స (ㅏ + ㅏ = ㅏ)
크다	켰 크 + 었 = 컸 (으 is dropped when modifying)

저는 학교에 갔어요.	<i>I went to school.</i>
어제 버스를 탔어요.	<i>I got on the bus yesterday.</i>
그 사람은 키가 컸어요.	<i>That man was tall.</i>

### Indirect Objects

Indirect object particles are used to mean "to (someone)." There are three kinds of indirect object particles in Korean.

-에게	<i>to someone (literate form)</i>
-한테	<i>to someone (spoken form)</i>
-께	<i>to someone (polite form)</i>

-에게 appears in letters or books more than as a spoken form, whereas -한테 is mostly used in speech. -께 is an honorific expression. Take a look at the following examples.

은지는 민호에게 책을 주었다.	<i>Eunji gave a book to Minho.</i>
민호는 은지에게 일을 주었다.	<i>Minho gave some work to Eunji.</i>
크리스한테 안내해 주세요.	<i>Give a tour to Chris.</i>
친구한테 편지를 쓰겠어요.	<i>I will write a letter to my friend.</i>
그 분께 인사 드리세요.	<i>Give a greeting to that person (hon.).</i>
사장님께 그 소식을 들었어요.	<i>I heard the news from the CEO.</i>

Notice that -께 is usually used with people who are older, a boss, parents, or other older relatives.

### Making Requests: -어 주세요/-아 주세요

In Korean, when you want to politely ask someone to do something, the request sometimes appears as an ending, and other times as a grammatical form. This form -어 주세요/-아 주세요 is used to make requests. Remember the distinction of dark and bright vowel classes and the



“vowel harmony” phenomenon in Korean? The -어/아 part will alternate depending on the vowel from the preceding syllable. If the preceding syllable contains the vowel 아, -아 is used. If the preceding syllable contains the vowel 어, -어 is used.

-아 주세요	-어 주세요
가 + -아 주세요 가주세요. Please go.	먹어 + -어 주세요 먹어 주세요. Please eat.

Let's see how this works with some other Korean verbs you're familiar with:

사 주세요. (사 + 아)	Please buy.
와 주세요. (오 + 아)	Please come.
들어 주세요. (들 + 어)	Please listen.
배워 주세요. (배우 + 어)	Please learn.

### Modification of the Verb Root 하다 (To Do)

The verb -하다 is very productively used verb, but it is irregular. Let's review how -하다 verbs are modified in other tenses.

Polite-friendly ending	하 + 아요 = 해요
Polite-formal ending	하 + ㅂ니다 = 합니다
Request form	하 + 아 주세요 = 해 주세요
Past tense with polite friendly ending	하 + 았+어요 = 했어요
First person future tense	하 + ㄹ게요 = 할게요
Conjectural future	하 + 겠+어요 = 하겠어요

The verb 하다 is productively combined with other nouns to turn a noun into a verb. Let's take a look at more examples of the 하다 class of verbs using the request form -해 주세요.

공부하다	공부해 주세요. Please (do the) study.
일하다	일해 주세요. Please do the work.
잘하다	잘해 주세요. Please do it well.
빨래하다	빨래해 주세요. Please do the laundry.

### Dependent Noun -분

The expression -분 is frequently used in business settings that requires a modifier (acting as an adjective) to complete the meaning. The modifier is formed using the following formula:

adjective + -L / -은 + 분

Use -L after vowels, and -은 after consonants.

작은 분	small person (hon.)
잘 생긴 분	good-looking person (hon.)
파마한 분	the person with permed hair (hon.)

### 7G. READING

The following shows part of a work order from the boss. First, circle the words that you recognize. Many words in this text are loan words from English. Second, underline the sentences that you can translate and translate those sentences into English. Find the indirect object particles and request forms that you've just learned.

날짜: 12월 10일 금요일

이름: 크리스 잭슨

이메일: chrisj@korean.net

전화: 1-82-02-2355-3906

제목: 전진 코리아 센터 웹 업데이트

내용: 크리스 잭슨씨, 월요일 오후까지 업데이트 된 웹사이트를 인터넷 상에 올려주시기 바랍니다. 그리고 민지씨에게 그 파일을 주세요. 내일은 프로그램 A를 다운로드 해 주세요. 감사합니다.

Date: December 10th, Friday

Name: Chris Jackson

Email: chrisj@korean.net

Phone: 1-82-02-2355-3906

Title: JeonJin Korean Center Web Update

Content: Mr. Chris Jackson, please upload the updated website on online by Monday afternoon. And give the file to Minji. Please download Program A tomorrow. Thank you.

#### NEW VOCABULARY

올려주시기

*please upload (polite/fml./hon.)*

바랍니다

*to hope (polite/fml./hon.)*

## 7H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

### Korean Job Culture

Koreans are generally friendly people and desire to show this warmth in their work relationships. They are conscientious of how you feel and what you think, once you are involved in their lives. In a traditional setting, business was executed not through paperwork but through people. Koreans did not believe in paperwork; instead, they grew to trust a business partner through personal conversations, meetings, and other human interactions. Therefore, sometimes making a paper agreement between business partners was despised because it proved that the business partner did not trust the work relationship. In this context, a person's academic background, hometown, and mutual acquaintances in the region were main factors in deciding whether a person was worth working with or not. A person's skills were considered less important than all of these other factors. Therefore, a connection through various relationships interwoven in Korean society used to be extremely important to achieving success. This tradition still exists on some levels in Korean business, but many employers try to focus more on the skillset of a worker. The social life of business bleeds through to other parts of office life; for example, it is important to Koreans to spend time with their co-workers. Korean colleagues go to lunch together as a group virtually all the time! Eating lunch together allows them to strengthen their personal relationship and bring some humanity into their work.

## EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

부탁해요    같이    일했어요    바빠요    안녕하세요

- A. 크리스씨, 지금 뭐 하세요?  
 B. 좀 \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_. 왜요?  
 A. 아, 네. 여기 인사하세요. 오늘 부터 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 일하게 될 은지씨예요.  
 B. \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_? 저는 크리스 잭슨이에요.  
 C. 안녕하세요? 잘 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 김은지예요.  
 B. 어디에서 오셨어요?  
 A. 네, 은지씨는, 서울에서 왔어요.  
 B. 저도 한국에서 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_. 그래서 한국말을 잘 해요!

B. Use -어 주세요 or -아 주세요, to express "please" with the given verbs, as in the example.

있어요 → 있어 주세요

1. 가세요 → \_\_\_\_\_.  
 2. 따라 오세요 → \_\_\_\_\_.  
 3. 배우세요 → \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4. 오세요 → \_\_\_\_\_.  
 5. 일해요 → \_\_\_\_\_.

C. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate particle.

1. 오늘 \_\_\_\_\_ 같이 일하게 될 크리스예요.  
 2. 크리스 \_\_\_\_\_ 회사 좀 보여 줘요.  
 3. 제 책상 \_\_\_\_\_ 어디예요?  
 4. 몇 명 \_\_\_\_\_ 같이 일해요?  
 5. LA 에서 육개월 동안 한국어 \_\_\_\_\_ 배웠어요.

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.

1. I'm a little busy today.
2. I heard the words yesterday (*hon.*).
3. Please show (him) around the company.
4. I learned Korean for six months in L.A.
5. Chris, your desk is on my left side.

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. b) 미국                      2. b) 다섯 명                      3. c) 은지 옆
4. “배웠어요” means “I learned.”                      5. 어서오세요.

### Exercises

- A. 1. 바빠요 2. 같이 3. 안녕하세요 4. 부탁해요 5. 일했어요
- B. 1. 가 주세요 2. 따라 와 주세요 3. 배워 주세요 4. 와 주세요  
5. 일해 주세요
- C. 1. 부터 2. 에게 3. 은 4. 이 5. 를
- D. 1. 저는 오늘 좀 바빠요. 2. 어제 말씀 들었어요.  
3. 회사 좀 보여 주세요. 4. LA에서 한국어를 6개월 동안 배웠어요.  
5. 크리스씨의 책상은 제 왼쪽이에요.

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Let's use the content of this lesson to do some writing in your Korean journal on the topic of office relationships and tasks. First, find some distinctive tasks you do at your work (if you don't currently work, just use your imagination for tasks you might be asked to perform on a job). Try to translate your tasks with the action verbs you've learned, and use these verbs to ask someone to perform the task for you. Then, make a list of things you'd like to do at work the next day, and try to write them in Korean. For example, you may write something like, "Ask Chris to send a fax to the head of the department", or, "I will teach Korean to Mary." Try to make your English sentences as simple and direct as possible so that you can write them in Korean easily. Use the indirect object -한테/-에게/-께 forms in your sentences. You can also try to describe your coworkers, fellow students, or family members using the descriptive phrases you learned in this lesson.

# LESSON

# 8

여보세요? 병원이지요?

Hello, Is This the Hospital?

In this lesson, you will learn how to make phone calls and reservations in Korean. You'll learn various expressions related to phone conversations—in particular, the numbering systems used in Korean for counting and giving phone numbers. Let's get started with a vocabulary warm-up first.

## 8A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

여보세요?

*Hello?*

봬고 싶은데요...

*I'd like to see...*

어디가 아프세요?

*Where are you sick? (What?)*

배가 아파요.

*I am sick to my stomach.*

체한 것 같아요.

*I seem to have a stomachache.*

진료

*diagnosis*

예약하시겠어요?

*Would you like an appointment?*

의료 보험증

*medical care card*

성함과 전화번호

*name and phone number*

## 8B. DIALOGUE

Eunji is not feeling well today. She has had a headache since this morning, and now it is getting worse. She has even developed a stomachache as well, so she decides to call the doctor's office.

은지: 여보세요?

간호사: 네. 을지병원입니다.

은지: 의사 선생님을 좀 만나고 싶은데요.

간호사: 어디가 아프세요?

은지: 아침부터 머리가 아프더니 지금은 갑자기

배가 아파요.

간호사: 열도 나세요?

은지: 열은 많이 안 나요. 체한 것 같아요. 예약이 언제 되지요?

간호사: 오후 마지막 진료만 남았어요. 4시 40분입니다. 예약하시겠어요?

은지: 네, 감사합니다. 4시 40분에 가겠습니다.

간호사: 의료 보험증 있으세요?

은지: 네, 있어요.

간호사: 성함과 전화번호 좀 부탁드립니다.

은지: 제 이름은 이은지이고 전화번호는 355의 7490입니다.

간호사: 네, 진찰 예약되었습니다.

**Eunji:** Hello?

**Nurse:** Yes, this is Eul Ji hospital.

**Eunji:** I'd like to see a doctor, please.

**Nurse:** Where are you sick?

**Eunji:** I've had a headache since this morning, and now I suddenly started having a stomachache.

**Nurse:** Do you have a fever?

**Eunji:** I don't have that much of one. I seem to have an upset stomach. When is it possible to make an appointment?

**Nurse:** There is only one last time remaining this afternoon. It is at 4:40. Would you like to make an appointment?

**Eunji:** Yes, thank you. I will go at 4:40.

**Nurse:** Do you have a medical insurance card?

**Eunji:** Yes, I do.

**Nurse:** Your name and phone number, please?

**Eunji:** My name is Yi Eunji, and the phone number is 355-7490.

**Nurse:** Yes, your doctor's reservation is set.

### Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- Since when has Eunji felt sick?  
a) 어제                      b) 오늘 아침                      c) 오늘 오후
- What symptoms does Eunji not have?  
a) 머리가 아파요              b) 눈이 아파요                      c) 열이 많이 나요
- What did the nurse ask Eunji to bring?  
a) 주민 등록증              b) 의료 보험증                      c) 운전 면허증
- "Diagnosis" in Korean is \_\_\_\_\_.
- "열도 나세요?" is asking \_\_\_\_\_.

### 8C. VOCABULARY

여보세요?	<i>Hello? (opening remark for phone call)</i>
병원	<i>hospital</i>
의사 선생님	<i>Doctor (선생님 - honorific title, literal meaning is "teacher")</i>
봌고 싶은데요... (봌다)	<i>I'd like to see/meet ...</i>
아프세요? (아프다)	<i>(Are you) sick?</i>
머리	<i>head</i>
-더니	<i>used to (situation in the past)</i>
갑자기	<i>suddenly</i>
배	<i>stomach</i>
열	<i>fever</i>
나세요 (나다)	<i>to appear</i>
체한 것 같아요.	<i>I seem to have a stomachache.</i>
예약	<i>reservation</i>
언제 되지요? (되다)	<i>When is it possible?</i>
마지막	<i>last</i>
진료	<i>diagnosis</i>
가능하다	<i>to be possible</i>
의료 보험증	<i>medical insurance card</i>
가지고 가다	<i>to take and bring</i>



오늘 아침	<i>this morning</i>
오늘 오후	<i>this afternoon</i>
성함	<i>name</i>
전화번호	<i>phone number</i>
예약되었습니다. (예약되다)	<i>You're set (for an appointment).</i>

## 8D. KEY PHRASES

The following expressions are some common phone-related expressions.

여보세요?	<i>Hello? (on the phone)</i>
전화 왔습니다.	<i>You have a phone call. (lit., The phone call came.)</i>
누구세요?	<i>Who is (calling) please?</i>
누구시라고 전해드릴까요?	<i>Who should I say called?</i>
남기실 메시지 있으세요?	<i>Do you have a message to leave? (Would you like to leave a message?)</i>
잘못 거셨습니다.	<i>You dialed a wrong number.</i>
몇 번에 거셨어요?	<i>What number did you call?</i>
거기 어디예요?	<i>Where am I calling? (lit., Where is there?)</i>
이 전화번호 맞아요?	<i>Is this phone number correct?</i>
은지 좀 바꿔주세요.	<i>Can I speak to Eunji? (Bring Eunji on the phone.)</i>
은지하고 통화 좀 할 수 있을까요?	<i>Could I speak to Eunji please?</i>
지금은 통화 중이신데요.	<i>(She/He) is on the phone now.</i>
음성사서함에 메시지를 남기세요.	<i>Leave a voice mail.</i>
핸드폰 번호 있으세요?	<i>Do you have a cell phone number?</i>
전화 번호가 어떻게 됩니까?	<i>What is your phone number?</i>

## 8E. CULTURE TOPIC

### Telephones

The Korean national area code is 82. So when you make an international phone call to Korea, you will first dial 82 and then the area code, followed by the phone number. Seoul's area code is 02, and as the number of land lines and mobile phone services grew exponentially, Seoul began using the four-digit phone number system a few years ago to accommodate the growing number of phone numbers in the city. The use of cell phones became standard in Korean culture beginning in the late 1990s. The public use of cell phones is common. It is not considered very courteous to make loud phone calls in public, but many people are constantly on their cell phones, so you will observe this behavior quite often, even on the subway or bus.

## 8F. GRAMMAR

### Counting Numbers Beyond 10

There are two ways to count numbers in Korean. One is often called a Sino-Korean numbering system, and the other one is called a Korean-Korean numbering system. "Sino-" indicates an aspect of the Korean language inherited from Chinese language.

0	공		
1	일	11	십일
2	이	12	십이
3	삼	13	십삼
4	사	14	십사
5	오	20	이십
6	육	30	삼십
7	칠	40	사십
8	팔	50	오십
9	구	100	백
10	십	1000	천

The Sino-Korean system is generally used to refer to higher numbers, as when counting money, or giving the minutes when telling time. Phone numbers are also said in Sino-Korean numbers. Look at the following example:

A: 전화번호가 뭐예요?

B: 353-2660 입니다. (삼오삼의 이육육공입니다.)

The dash between the numbers reads as -에, which is the same sound as the location particle.

공일팔에 이팔삼에 사륙일오	018-283-4615 (example of a cell phone number)
공이삼에 팔팔칠에 일공이사	023-887-1024 (example of a local phone number)
일오팔팔에 이이삼삼	1588-2233 (example of a toll-free number)

The other numbering system, as we have seen before, is called the Korean-Korean numbering system. In Lesson 3, you learned the Korean numbers up to 10, and in Lesson 4, you learned 열 하나 (11) and 열 둘 (12) while learning how to tell time. These numbers act as substantives and are used without any counters. Now let's learn some more Korean numbers.

KOREAN-KOREAN NUMBERS			
1	하나	11	열하나
2	둘	12	열둘
3	셋	13	열셋
4	넷	14	열넷
5	다섯	20	스물
6	여섯	30	서른
7	일곱	40	마흔
8	여덟	50	쉰
9	아홉	60	예순
10	열	100	백

As you can see in the chart, 100 is expressed in Sino-Korean since Sino-Korean is used to count higher numbers. The Korean-Korean numbering system is used to count lower numbers, such as the hours when telling time, as well as with expressions using a noun-counter, such as -개 (counting objects) or -명 (counting people), as we explored in Lesson 3. When used with counters, the first four numbers in the

Korean-Korean counting system will change slightly. Here are some examples of this change with the object counter -개:

NUMBER	CHANGE IN SOUND	EXPRESSIONS
1	하나 → 한	한 개 (one thing)
2	둘 → 두	두 개 (two things)
3	셋 → 세	세 개 (three things)
4	넷 → 네	네 개 (four things)
5	스물 → 스무	스무 개 (twenty things)

### I Like To . . . -고 싶은 데요

-고 싶은 데요 is actually two grammar patterns joined together. The first part, "verb + 고 싶," expresses one's wishes and desires, and the second part, -은 데요, gives background information contradicting the impressions or expectations of the listener. All together, "verb + 고 싶은 데요" generally means "I like to + verb" and is a very common expression in actual use. It is also a mild and polite way to express one's wishes when they are in contradiction to the wishes of others.

VERB	+	-고 싶	+	-은 데요
Main verbal expression		Wishes, desires: grammar pattern (before ending)		Background information, contrasting to the hearer's expectation (ending)

The verb before -고 싶 should be a verb base form, which means a non-tensed verb infinitive. Let's see some examples of this pattern with a few verbs you already know.

VERB + 고 싶은데요	
저는 영화관에 가고 싶은데요.	I'd like to go to the movies. (unlike what you think)
지금 점심이 먹고 싶은데요.	I'd like to eat lunch right now. (unlike what you think)
내일은 한국어를 공부하고 싶은데요.	I'd like to study Korean tomorrow. (unlike what you think)

## 8G. READING

The following chart shows a part of the 을지 병원's appointment schedule tomorrow. Read the patient's name and all the phone numbers out loud; try to rewrite the phone numbers in Korean pronunciation.

환자 이름	시간	전화번호
김 명희	9:45 a.m.-10:30 a.m.	664-7823
조 세철	10:30 a.m.-11:15 a.m.	374-9801
이 광수	11:15 a.m.-12 p.m.	284-6580

The following text is from Minhø's voice mail message. Identify some of the expressions and words that you know.

안녕하세요? 박민호 입니다. 저는 지금 전화를 받을수가 없습니다. 삐 소리가 나면 음성 사서함에 용건을 남겨주세요. 감사합니다. 좋은 하루 되세요!

*Hello, I am Park Minhø. I cannot get to the phone (take the phone) right now; please leave your message on the voice mail after you hear the beep. Thank you. Have a nice day!*

### NEW VOCABULARY

삐 소리	<i>beep(ing sound)</i>
소리	<i>sound</i>
용건	<i>content/message</i>
좋은 하루 되세요!	<i>Have a nice day! (idiom)</i>

## 8H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

### Mobile Technologies in Korea

Korea has become known for the recent development of its technology industry since the 1990s. World-renowned Korean companies such as Samsung and LG created many popular cell phones and are among the leaders of mobile device technologies. In Korean, "Samsung" means "three stars," and "LG" is a combination of two names, "Lucky" and "GoldStar." "Lucky" and "GoldStar" are the names of two companies that merged in 1995. Not only are these brands famous for cell phones, but

they have also become noted for their achievements in flat panel LCD screen technology. Samsung and LG have been deeply involved in this "technology war" against each other, and their rivalry has become a motivation for innovation. These two companies are gaining a great amount of respect both domestically and abroad for technological and industrial achievements in the flat screen and mobile markets, and are quickly becoming known as industry leaders. The success of these companies is creating a positive influence on Korea's worldwide image.

### EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

받고 싶은데요 가지고	아프세요	예약	여보세요
----------------	------	----	------

- A. \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B. 네, 병원입니다. 어디가 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. 배가 너무 아파요. 의사 선생님을 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B. \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 하고 싶으세요?  
 A. 네. 몇 시에 갈까요?  
 B. 오늘 오후 세 시 반에 오세요. 그리고 의료 보험증 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 오세요.  
 A. 감사합니다.

B. Give the most logical answers to the questions in Korean.

- 어디 가세요? → \_\_\_\_\_.
- 어디가 아프세요? → \_\_\_\_\_.
- 몇 시에 갈까요? → \_\_\_\_\_.
- 열도 나세요? → \_\_\_\_\_.
- 예약하시겠어요? → \_\_\_\_\_.

C. How are these numbers read in Korean? Write them in either Sino-Korean or Korean-Korean numbers according to their proper usage.

- 100 → \_\_\_\_\_.
- 02-353-7191 → \_\_\_\_\_.
- 1-617-220-3778 → \_\_\_\_\_.

4. three things → \_\_\_\_\_.

5. four people → \_\_\_\_\_.

D. Translate the following English expressions into Korean.

1. Suddenly I have a stomachache.
2. I'd like to make a reservation, please.
3. I've had a headache since this morning.
4. Do you have a fever also?
5. I'll go there at 4:40.

### ANSWER KEY

#### Comprehension Practice

1. b) 오늘 아침      2. b) 눈이 아파요      3. b) 의료 보험증
4. "Diagnosis" in Korean is "진찰."
5. "열도 나세요?" is asking "do you have a fever?"

#### Exercises

- A. 1. 여보세요 2. 아프세요 3. 뵙고 싶은데요 4. 예약 5. 가지고
- B. (suggested answers) 1. 병원에 가요. 2. 머리가 아파요. 3. 세 시에 오세요. 4. 네. 많이 나요. 5. 네. 다섯 시에 예약하고 싶은데요.
- C. 1. 백 2. 공이에 삼오삼에 칠일구일 3. 일에 육일칠에 이이공에 삼칠칠팔 4. 세 개 5. 네 명
- D. 1. 갑자기 배가 아파요. 2. 예약하고 싶은데요. 3. 아침부터 머리가 아파요. 4. 열도 나세요? 5. 4시 40분에 가겠습니다.

### INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Use your journal entry today to write out the phone numbers of your friends in Sino-Korean numbers. You might also want to pretend you are playing the role of receptionist, offering to take message for others in Korean. Additionally, pretend you have an opinion contrary to someone else's and practice writing out a few expressions using -고싶은데요.

# LESSON

# 9

여섯 시간마다 이 약을 드세요.

Take This Medicine Every  
Six Hours.

In this lesson, you will be introduced to a situation involving a conversation between a doctor and a patient at the doctor's office. Polite command expressions and expressions using "every" will be introduced, along with the descriptions of various illnesses and symptoms. Let's get started first with a vocabulary warm-up!

## 9A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

어서 오세요!

*Come on in! (Welcome!)*

성함이 . . . 세요?

*Is your name (fml. honorific) . . . ?*

어떻게 오셨어요?

*What brought you here?  
(honorific past)*

아랫배가 살살 아파요.

*My lower stomach is slowly  
getting upset.*

여섯 시간마다 한번씩 드세요.

*Take (this) every six hours.*

물만 마시세요.

*Drink only water.*

식중독

*food poisoning*

절대 안정하세요.

*You must rest.*

## 9B. DIALOGUE

Eunji arrives at Eul Ji general hospital in the afternoon. She has checked in and is now waiting to see the doctor.

의사: 안녕하세요? 성함이 이은지 씨세요?

은지: 네, 이 은지예요. 4시 40분 예약인데요.

의사: 어서 오세요. 어떻게 오셨어요?

은지: 네, 오늘 아침부터 머리가 너무 아프더니  
오후에는 배가 아프기 시작했어요.

의사: 배는 어떻게 아프기 시작했어요?



은지: 처음에는 아랫배가 살살 아프더니 이제는 전체가 다 아파요.

의사: 어제 밤부터 오늘 아침까지 뭐를 드셨습니까?

은지: 어제 밤에 회를 먹었는데...

의사: 식중독이에요. 이 약을 여섯 시간마다 한 번씩 드시고, 지금부터는 물만 마시세요. 내일까지 아무 음식도 드시지 마세요.

은지: 알겠습니다.

의사: 그리고 절대 안정하세요.

**Doctor:** *How are you? Is your name Yi Eunji?*

**Eunji:** *Yes, I am Yi Eunji. I have an appointment at 4:40.*

**Doctor:** *Come on in. What brought you here?*

**Eunji:** *Well, this morning, I got a severe headache; then, in the afternoon, my stomach started hurting.*

**Doctor:** *How did the stomachache start?*

**Eunji:** *At first, my lower stomach started aching slowly, and now, my whole stomach is aching.*

**Doctor:** *What have you eaten from last night to this morning?*

**Eunji:** *I ate sashimi last night...*

**Doctor:** *It's food poisoning. Take this medicine every six hours, and from now on, drink only water. Don't eat any food until tomorrow.*

**Eunji:** *I see.*

**Doctor:** *And you need absolute rest.*

### Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

1. What did the doctor say Eunji needs to do to treat her symptoms?  
a) 물만 마시세요    b) 음식을 드세요    c) 6시에 드세요
2. When did Eunji eat sashimi?  
a) 어제 오후    b) 어제 밤    c) 오늘 아침
3. How often does Eunji have to take her medicine?  
a) every four hours    b) every six hours    c) every eight hours
4. What did the doctor say Eunji has? \_\_\_\_\_.
5. "물만 마시세요" means \_\_\_\_\_.

### 9C. VOCABULARY

어서 오세요!	<i>Come on in! (welcoming remark)</i>
성함	<i>name (formal term at the business site)</i>
어떻게 오셨어요?	<i>What brought you here? (fml./polite expression)</i>
예약	<i>reservation</i>
-더니	<i>used to (past terminated action)</i>
시작했어요	<i>started</i>
아랫배	<i>lower stomach</i>
살살	<i>slowly, gradually, slightly</i>
아프다	<i>to be sick</i>
전체	<i>whole</i>
드셨습니까?	<i>Did you eat? (hon.)</i>
회	<i>sashimi</i>
식중독	<i>food poisoning</i>
약	<i>medicine</i>
-마다	<i>every-</i>
-번씩	<i>each (used with a number)</i>
물	<i>water</i>
마시다	<i>to drink</i>
아무	<i>any (used in negative expression)</i>

-지 마세요	<i>don't (negative command marker)</i>
절대 안정	<i>absolute rest</i>
음식	<i>food</i>
두통	<i>headache</i>
심한 두통	<i>severe headache</i>
오늘 아침	<i>this morning</i>
어제 밤	<i>last night</i>

## 9D. KEY PHRASES

Here are some expressions used to describe symptoms.

두통이 심해요.	<i>I have a severe headache.</i>
발목을 삐었어요.	<i>I sprained my ankle.</i>
눈병이 났어요.	<i>I caught an eye infection.</i>
열이 많이 나요.	<i>I have a high fever.</i>
감기에 걸렸어요.	<i>I caught a cold.</i>
독감인 것 같아요.	<i>I seem to have the flu.</i>
배가 아파요.	<i>I have a stomachache.</i>
설사가 나요.	<i>I have diarrhea.</i>
가래가 많이 나와요.	<i>I have phlegm.</i>
정신이 없어요.	<i>I am mindless.</i>
토할 것 같아요.	<i>I am about to vomit.</i>
땀이 많이 나요.	<i>I sweat too much.</i>
머리가 어지러워요.	<i>I have dizziness.</i>
허리가 아파요.	<i>I have back pain.</i>
기침이 나요.	<i>I have a cough.</i>

It is also important to know the parts of the body when visiting a Korean doctor.

머리	<i>head</i>
팔	<i>arm</i>
다리	<i>leg</i>
배	<i>stomach</i>
허리	<i>waist/back</i>

발	<i>foot</i>
손	<i>hand</i>
눈	<i>eye</i>
이	<i>teeth</i>
귀	<i>ear</i>
가슴	<i>chest</i>
심장	<i>heart</i>

## 9E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

When someone in an official position asks for some personal information about you, she or he will say “...이 어떻게 되십니까?” The ending “-니까?” is a formal way of asking questions. The expression “...이 어떻게 되십니까?” literally means “how did it become . . .?” but the conventional use of it is “what is . . .?” So “성함이 어떻게 되십니까?” is asking “How did it become your name?” in direct translation, but it means “What is your name?” Korean expressions commonly use these indirect means of asking questions, as you can see in the above examples.

## 9F. GRAMMAR

### The Korean Gerund

The gerund (verb + -ing) form of verbs is formed in Korean using the ending -기:

먹+기 = 먹기	<i>eating</i>
가+기	<i>going</i>
오+기	<i>coming</i>
자+기	<i>sleeping</i>
일+기	<i>working</i>

The gerund is used in the following construction:

verb + 기 시작하다  
It starts + verb + -ing.

배는 어떻게 아프기 시작했어요?	<i>When did your stomach start hurting?</i>
-------------------	---

Nouns can also be formed from verbs in Korean using the ending -ㅁ/-음.

### Every: -마다 and 매-

마다 comes at the end of the noun to indicate “every,” as in “every June,” “everybody,” “every student,” etc.

every ten years	10 년마다 (십년마다)
every April	4 월마다 (사월마다)
every person	사람마다
every student	학생마다

Another way to express “every” is by placing 매 in front of a time expression. This expression is usually used as follows.

every day	매일
every week	매주
every month	매월
every year	매년

### Past Perfect Form -더니

-더니 is another past tense construction similar to the English expression “used to,” which describes a situation that happened in the past, and that is no longer happening due to a change in circumstance. The verb form can be present or past form. The present tense verb + 더니 construction describes the situation from the perspective of the present tense and is used in the context of the present. On the other hand, the past tense verb + 더니 is used in the context of a past tense description, and thus acts as a past perfect tense form.

VERB, TENSE	VERB + 더니	ENGLISH
가, <i>present</i>	가더니	<i>went (used to go)</i>
갔, <i>past</i>	갔더니	<i>had gone/went (used to go)</i>
먹, <i>present</i>	먹더니	<i>ate (used to eat)</i>
먹었, <i>past</i>	먹었더니	<i>had eaten/ate (used to eat)</i>

### Positive and Negative Commands: -세요 and -지 마세요

The positive command form uses the ending -세요. -지 마세요 is a negative command form meaning “Please don’t . . .” Both are polite and formal expressions.

The positive command form is -세요. We first encountered this form in the greeting 안녕하세요 at the beginning of the lesson. Let’s see more examples with commonly used verbs.

POSITIVE COMMAND -세요	
가세요.	<i>Please go.</i>
공부하세요.	<i>Please study.</i>
드세요.	<i>Please eat.</i>

Let’s look at some examples of the negative command form.

NEGATIVE COMMAND -지 마세요	
가지 마세요.	<i>Don’t go.</i>
늦지 마세요.	<i>Don’t be late.</i>
아프지 마세요.	<i>Don’t be sick.</i>
물 마시지 마세요.	<i>Don’t drink water.</i>

## 9G. READING

The following is a doctor’s diagnosis of a patient’s symptoms. Underline the words that you recognize.

김수진씨:	<i>Ms. Sujin Kim:</i>
여, 40세	<i>Female, 40 years old</i>
증상: 열이 40도까지 오름.	<i>Symptoms: Fever reached up to 40C.</i>
기침이 심함. 독감 증상이 보임. 다섯 시간 동안 땀이 났다고 함. 배가 아픔.	<i>Serious coughing. Flu symptoms are observed. Reported five hours of sweating. Stomachache.</i>

여	female
증상	symptoms
오름	reach up
보임	seen
함	reported, said
아픔	hurting

## 9H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Many Koreans believe that a certain type of face or body shape can determine a person's nature, fate, and life story. This is called **관상학**, and even in the 21st century, some older Koreans think that there is certain truth to it. A round-shaped face on a woman is "lucky," for example. A person with a round face is said to be generous, kind, and affectionate. A person who has a square face, on the other hand, is resistant and stubborn. Many Koreans believe particularly that square-faced women are resistant and don't listen to other people's opinions. The features on a face are said to tell a person's life story. The top part of the face (from the forehead to the area around the eyes) foretells what a person's later life will be like. If a person has a large forehead, this means that this person will live richly in later life. The middle part of the face foretells a person's luck in his or her middle age. If a person has well-proportioned features around the middle, this person will have a balanced life in his or her middle age. The chin and lips tell of the early years of a person's life. If the lips are thin, the person is not very good at keeping secrets!

### EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

드셨어요    성함    시작했어요    아파요    예약

- A. 어서오세요. \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 이 어떻게 되십니까?  
 B. 김은지예요. 4시 30분 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 인데요.  
 A. 네. 의사선생님이 곧 나오실 거예요.  
 B. 어디가 아프세요?  
 A. 아침부터 머리가 너무 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B. 배는 안 아프세요?  
 A. 배도 아프기 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_.

B. 어제 밤이나 오늘 아침에 뭐 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_.

B. Fill in the blanks with the best particle.

1. 머리( ) 너무 아파요.
2. 어제밤( ) 오늘 아침에 뭐 드셨습니까?
3. 성함( ) 어떻게 되십니까?
4. 내일( ) 아무 음식도 드시지 마세요.
5. 여섯 시간( ) 한 번씩 드세요.

C. Make positive and negative command forms as directed by the clues in parentheses. Don't forget to place appropriate particles in the sentences.

Example: 먹다 (음식) → (neg.) 음식을 먹지 마세요.

1. 가다 (학교) → (pos.) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. 드시다 (물) → (neg.) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. 드시다 (약) → (pos.) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. 보다 (책) → (neg.) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. 배우다 (한국어) → (pos.) \_\_\_\_\_.

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.

1. Come on in! What is your name please? (hon.)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I have a 3:30 p.m. reservation.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I ate sashimi last night.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. From now on, drink only water.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What brought you here?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Comprehension Practice

1. a) 물만 마시세요 2. b) 어제 밤 3. b) every six hours
4. The doctor said that Eunji has food poisoning, or “식중독.”
5. “물만 마시세요” means “only drink water.”

## Exercises

- A. 1. 성함 2. 예약 3. 아파요 4. 시작했어요 5. 드셨어요
- B. 1. 가 2. 이나 3. 이 4. 까지 5. 마다
- C. 1. 학교에 가세요. 2. 물을 드시지 마세요. 3. 약을 드세요.  
4. 책을 보지 마세요. 5. 한국어를 배우세요.
- D. 1. 어서오세요! 성함이 어떻게 되십니까? 2. 3시 30분 예약인데요. 3. 어제 밤에 회를 먹었어요. 4. 지금부터 물만 마시세요. 5. 여기 어떻게 오셨어요?

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Let's use the grammar and the conventional expressions that we learned in this lesson! Think of all the different symptoms that you might have experienced over the past five years. Make a list of ten. Now, translate the symptoms into Korean as best you can. Then, form complete sentences with the symptoms, using the appropriate particles and connectors. Try to use -더니 in three sentences, and use -기 시작했어요 in three sentences. Write the treatment for each case as well, using -지 마세요 or -세요, as if you were giving advice to a patient or a friend.



In this lesson, you will learn expressions you might need when dealing with money and other transactions at the bank. You will learn a new postposition, -만, and the expression of intention, -려고. We'll introduce more past tense constructions in this lesson as well. Let's get started with the vocabulary warm-up!

### 10A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

입금 좀 하려고요.	<i>I'd like to make a deposit, please.</i>
알겠습니다.	<i>I see.</i>
60만원만 보내주세요.	<i>Please send 600,000 won only.</i>
예금 통장	<i>checking account</i>
주민 등록증	<i>citizen's registration card (equivalent to a social security card)</i>
저금 통장	<i>savings account</i>
상담하면 돼요?	<i>Should I consult . . . ?</i>

### 10B. DIALOGUE

Eunji needs to go to the bank on Saturday morning. She enters her local branch and gets in line.

은행원: 안녕하세요.

은지: 네, 입금 좀 하려고요. 그리고 송금도 필요해요.

은행원: 네, 여기 이 입금표와 송금 내역서를 써주세요.

은지: 여기 있습니다.

은행원: 모두 얼마 입금하세요?

- 은지: 모두 128만원이에요. 그리고 이 주소로 60만원만 송금해 주세요.
- 은행원: 알겠습니다. 주민 등록증이나 운전 면허증 있으세요?
- 은지: 네. 여기요. 아, 그런데 제 예금통장에 지금 얼마나 있어요?
- 은행원: 예금 통장에 현재 2,500만원이 있네요.
- 은지: 저금 통장을 만들려면 어떻게 해요?
- 은행원: 네, 저금 통장에는 여러가지가 있는데요. 잠깐만요. 제가 예금 담당 계장님을 불러드릴게요.
- 은지: 계장님과 제가 상담하면 돼요?
- 은행원: 네. 저 의자에 앉아서 기다리세요. 다음 분!

**Teller:** *How are you doing?*

**Eunji:** *Hi, I'd like to make a deposit. And I need a wire transfer as well.*

**Teller:** *Okay, fill in this deposit slip and wire transfer request form.*

**Eunji:** *Here you are.*

**Teller:** *How much is the total for the deposit?*

**Eunji:** *All together, 1,280,000 won. And the wire transfer is to this address, 600,000 won only.*

**Teller:** *I see. Do you have a driver's license or citizen's card?*

**Eunji:** *Yes, here you are. Ah, by the way, how much do I have in my checking account?*

**Teller:** *Right now you have 25,000,000 won in your checking account*

**Eunji:** *How do I set up a savings account?*

**Teller:** *Well, there are various kinds of savings accounts. Hold on a second. I'll call the manager.*

**Eunji:** *Should I consult the manager myself?*

**Teller:** *Yes. Please wait in that seat over there. Next!*

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- Why did Eunji go to the bank?
  - to get money
  - to set up a checking account
  - to make a deposit
- How much money did Eunji want to transfer?
  - 128 만원
  - 60만원
  - 2,500만원
- What did the teller ask Eunji to show?
  - 주민등록증
  - 입금표
  - 송금 내역서
- How do you say "deposit" in Korean? \_\_\_\_\_.
- "How much do I have ... ?" is \_\_\_\_\_.

## 10C. VOCABULARY

입금	deposit (n.)
송금	wire transfer
입금표	deposit slip
송금 내역서	wire transfer document
쓰다	to write
주소	address
알겠습니다 (알다)	to know
은행	bank
통장	account
저금 통장	savings account
예금 통장	checking account
현재	currently
얼마나	how much
주민 등록증	citizen's registration card
운전 면허증	driver's license
잠깐만요.	Please hold on a second.
의자	chair
앉다	to sit
기다리세요 (기다리다)	to wait
상담하다	to consult

은행원	teller
담당	(be in) charge (of)
계장님	chief clerk
-분	noun counter for persons (hon.)
-로	by (transportation), with (tool), to (directions) (part.)
-이나/-나	or
면	if, when

### 10D. KEY PHRASES

The following phrases are often used in various Korean places of business, including shops, banks, restaurants, and hotels.

어서오세요!	<i>Come on in! Welcome!</i>
안녕히 가세요!	<i>Good-bye!</i>
만원입니다.	<i>It's 10000 won.</i>
얼마나 드릴까요?	<i>How much would you like?</i>
여기 있습니다.	<i>Here you are.</i>
이 입금표 좀 써 주세요.	<i>Please fill in the deposit slip.</i>
계산서 여기 있습니다.	<i>Here is your check.</i>
여기 싸인 좀 해 주세요.	<i>Please sign here.</i>
여기 주소 좀 적어 주세요.	<i>Please write your address here.</i>
주민등록증 좀 주세요.	<i>Please give me your ID.</i>
잔돈 있으세요?	<i>Do you have any change?</i>
될 도와 드릴까요?	<i>How can I help you?</i>
안내대거 어디 있어요?	<i>Where is the information desk?</i>
영어 하시는 분 있어요?	<i>Is there anybody who speaks English?</i>

### 10E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Korean public services open late and close late compared with American institutions. No banks are open before 9 a.m., for example, and all public transportation runs later than 1 a.m. and sometimes through the night. The post offices open at 9 a.m., along with the governmental offices and other cultural centers.

Korean banks open later than typical American banks. Many banks open after 9 and operate until 4. When you enter the bank, you should pick up a waiting number first, as you might do at an American deli counter, instead of physically getting in line.

## 10F. GRAMMAR

### More Past Tense Constructions

Let's take a deeper look at the details of past tense construction. As we learned in Lesson 7, the Korean past tense is placed after a verb and before the sentence ending. The tense in Korean is always marked in this same location in the sentence. Remember that the past tense is marked with three different sounds depending on the feature of the preceding sound. By now, you may have noticed that a lot of Korean grammar is decided by the consonant-and-vowel alternative relations. Take a look at the chart below to review and practice past tense construction.

VERB ENDING WITH NO CONSONANT	VERB ENDING WITH A CONSONANT PRECEDED BY A BRIGHT VOWEL SOUND ("아")	VERB ENDING WITH A CONSONANT PRECEDED BY A DARK VOWEL SOUND ("어")
Verb + <b>ㅂ</b>	Verb + <b>았</b>	Verb + <b>었</b>
가 + <b>ㅂ</b> = 갔 갔어요 (went)	알 + <b>았</b> = 알았 알았어요 (knew)	먹 + <b>었</b> = 먹었 먹었어요 (ate)

은행에 가면서 버스를 타고 갔어요.	<i>I went by bus when I went to the bank.</i>
그 동안 한국에서 잘 지냈어요?	<i>Have you been doing well in Korea?</i>
은행에 가서 예금 통장을 만들었어요.	<i>I went to the bank and started a checking account.</i>
아침과 점심을 다 못 먹었어요.	<i>I could eat neither breakfast nor lunch.</i>
언니가 꽃을 사면서 웃었어요.	<i>My sister bought flowers while smiling.</i>

Remember the concept of vowel harmony in Korean: 아 is classified as a bright vowel in Korean, and it accompanies other 아 vowels to be harmonious. 어 is called a dark vowel, and it accompanies other 어 vowels. 이, 으, and 우 are considered dark vowels; 오 is considered a bright vowel.

Here are more examples of the past forms of Korean verbs.

VERB	MEANING	PAST FORM WITH A POLITE ENDING
가다	<i>to go</i>	갔어요
이다	<i>to be</i>	이었어요 ( <i>contr.</i> 였어요)
오다	<i>to come</i>	왔어요
자다	<i>to go</i>	잤어요
하다	<i>to do</i>	했어요
공부하다	<i>to study</i>	공부했어요
어떻다	<i>(to be) how</i>	어땠어요
물어보다	<i>to ask</i>	물어봤어요
타다	<i>to get on</i>	탤어요
돌다	<i>to turn</i>	돌았어요
있다	<i>to have</i>	있었어요
늦다	<i>to be late</i>	늦었어요
드리다	<i>to give (to someone else)</i>	드렸어요
주다	<i>to give</i>	주었어요
지내다	<i>to spend time</i>	지냈어요

### Expressions of Intention

A person's intentions are often expressed in English with the use of the infinitive. "I'd like *to go*" and "I went to the store *to buy* a soda" are common expressions showing one's intention to perform an action. The comparable expression in Korean is "verb + -려고."

VERB + 려고	
은행에 가려고	<i>to go to a bank</i>
예금 통장을 만들려고	<i>to open a checking account</i>
입금을 좀 하려고	<i>to place a deposit</i>

The expression "verb + -려고" is often accompanied by the dummy verb -하다 to finish the sentence. There isn't a huge difference in meaning of

the form with -하다 from the form without it; the difference is similarly observed in the English expressions "I went shopping *to buy* pants" and "I went shopping *in order to buy* pants." When using -하다, the tense is applied to the end of the -하다 verb.

VERB + -려고 + -하다	
은행에 가려고 하다.	<i>I try to go to the bank. (no tense involved)</i>
은행에 가려고 한다.	<i>I am trying to go to the bank. (present)</i>
은행에 가려고 했다.	<i>I tried to go to the bank. (past)</i>
은행에 가려고 할게요.	<i>I will try to go to the bank. (future/infm./polite)</i>
은행에 가려고 하겠어요.	<i>I will try to go to the bank. (future/fml./polite)</i>

### Postposition -만

We learned that a postposition is a meaningful particle that goes at the end of the noun construction to qualify its meaning. You previously learned the postposition -도, meaning "also" or "too." Now let's learn a new postposition: -만, "only."

POSTPOSITION -만 (ONLY)	
만원만	<i>only 10,000 won (10,000 won only)</i>
친구만	<i>only a friend (a friend only)</i>
은행만	<i>only a bank (a bank only)</i>

### Expressing Continuous Action with -서

When -서 appears between two verbs, it connects two continuous actions.

가서 보세요	<i>go and see</i>
와서 드세요	<i>come and eat</i>

## 10G. READING

1. Below is the content of a typical Korean driver's license. Identify the words that you know.

2종 보통

*Class 2*

자동차 운전 면허증

*Driver's license*

서울 95-027384-85

*Seoul 95-027384-85*

성명: 김 희철

*Name: Kim Hui Cheol*

681212-1978336

*681212-1978336*

주소: 서울 동대문 구로

*Address: Seoul dong dae mun gu*

869-13

*ro 869-13*

면허증 갱신 기간:

*License renewal period:*

2009.05.25-2009.8.25

*2009.05.25-2009.8.25*

2. Take a look at this bank form and find the words you know. Try filling it in yourself as an exercise.

입금표

*Deposit*

성명:

*Name:*

통장 번호:

*Account #:*

금액:

*Amount:*

날짜:

*Date:*

본인은 상기 금액의  
입금을 청구합니다.

*I hereby request a deposit of  
the amount of money above.*

서명:

*Signature:*

## 10H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

The Korean unit of currency is the *won*. The exchange rate for the won has been roughly \$1 = 1000 won over the past ten years or so. With 1000 won, you can buy a snack or a soda in the grocery store. The Korean national bank (한국 은행 Hankuk Eunhaeng) issues money in both paper and coin form. 1 won and 5 won coins are practically obsolete and out of use because their values are so low. The coins still in use are 10 won, 50 won, 100 won, and 500 won coins. The paper money begins with 1,000 won, 5,000 won, and 10,000 won bills. The Korean government is planning to design a 100,000 won bill, which will become the highest unit in paper money. Koreans do not use personal checks as Americans do. Instead, they use cash or money orders.

## EXERCISES

- A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

얼마	이름	하려고요	씨	주소
----	----	------	---	----

A. 뭐가 필요하세요? 도와드릴까요?

B. 네. 여기 입금 좀 \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_.

A. 그럼 입금표를 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 주세요.

B. 알겠습니다.

A. 모두 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 예요?

B. 다 120만원이에요.

A. \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 좀 써 주세요.

B. 네! 그리고 송금도 할게요.

A. 얼마나 하시겠어요?

B. 이 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_로 50만원 해 주세요.

- B. Use a past tense form to complete the following sentences.

1. 송금 내역서를 써 \_\_\_\_\_? (주다)

2. 얼마 \_\_\_\_\_? (필요하다)

3. 예금 통장을 \_\_\_\_\_ (만들다)

4. 은행 의자에서 오랫동안 \_\_\_\_\_ (기다리다)

5. 오늘 처음 통장을 \_\_\_\_\_ (보다)

- C. Translate the English sentences into Korean.

1. You're all set. → \_\_\_\_\_

2. I need a wire transfer, please. → \_\_\_\_\_

3. All together, it is 34,000 won. → \_\_\_\_\_

4. I see. → \_\_\_\_\_

5. Hold on a second. I'll call the manager. → \_\_\_\_\_

- D. Translate the English sentences into Korean.

1. I gave only 10,000 won. → \_\_\_\_\_

2. Minho worked only on Sundays. → \_\_\_\_\_





## Eunji's Brother's House

In this lesson, you will learn the names of the rooms around a house and the names of household objects. The grammar lesson will include the commenting sentence ending -네, the continuous action -면서, and the expression "it seems that . . ." Let's get started with a vocabulary warm-up!

**11A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP**

얼굴 좋아졌네!

*You look good! (lit., Your face got better!)*

어서 와!

*Come on in! (non-pol.)*

올케

*sister-in-law*

올케 언니

*older sister-in-law*

안방을 좀 넓히고

*enlarge the master bedroom and*

창고를 없애고

*get rid of the storage and*

좋은 생각이네!

*Good idea!*

화장실은 괜찮아.

*The bathroom is okay.***11B. DIALOGUE**

Eunji has been invited to visit her older brother Youngho, who has been thinking recently of remodeling his house.

영호: 은지야, 어서 와!

은지: 오빠, 오래간만이네. 얼굴 좋아졌네!

영호: 그래? 너도 좋아 보인다. 들어 와.

은지: 오빠, 올케 언니는?

영호: 응, 시장 갔어.

은지: 이 집을 리모델링 할 계획이 있다면서?

영호: 그래. 올 봄부터 좀 고쳐 보려고 해.  
아이들이 크면서 집이 작아져서.

은지: 어디를 고치려고?

영호: 여기 이 안방을 좀 넓히고 저기 작은 방  
옆에 방을 하나 더 만들려고 해.

은지: 어떻게?

영호: 이 작은 방 옆에 있는 창고를 없애고  
방으로 만들려고.

은지: 좋은 생각이네. 그럼 화장실은?

영호: 화장실은 그냥 둘 거야. 화장실은 괜찮아.

**Youngho:** Hey, Eunji, come on in!

**Eunji:** Brother, long time no see. You look good!

**Youngho:** Really? You look good too. Come inside.

**Eunji:** Where's your wife?

**Youngho:** Yeah, your sister-in-law went to the market.

**Eunji:** I heard you're planning to remodel this house.

**Youngho:** Yes, I intend to fix it starting (from) this spring. As the children grow up, the house gets bigger.

**Eunji:** What do you intend to fix?

**Youngho:** Here, this master bedroom should be enlarged, and I plan to build another room next to that small bedroom.

**Eunji:** How?

**Youngho:** The storage next to this small room is getting taken out, and we intend to build a room.

**Eunji:** That's a good idea! Then, the bathroom?

**Youngho:** I will leave the bathroom as is. The bathroom is okay.

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- Whose house are they talking about?  
a) 은지 오빠      b) 은지      c) 민호
- Where did Youngho's wife go?  
a) 은행      b) 병원      c) 시장
- What does Youngho plan to do with the storage?  
a) 화장실을 만든다      b) 안방을 만든다      c) 방을 만든다
- How do you say "bathroom"? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 안방 means \_\_\_\_\_.

## 11C. VOCABULARY

얼굴	face
좋-	good, nice, okay, positive
좋아지다	to get better
보다	to look
좋아 보이다	to look good
오다	to come
들어오다	to enter
들어 와.	Come on in. (non-polite)
오빠/형	older brother (f. speaker/ m. speaker)
올케 언니	older brother's wife (from a woman's point of view)
응	yeah
시장	market
집	house
리모델링	remodeling
계획	plan
있으면서...	I heard that you had...
올 봄	this spring
고쳐 보다 (고치다)	to intend to fix
아이들	children

크면서 (크다)  
 작아지다  
 넓히다  
 작은 방  
 더  
 창고  
 없애다  
 화장실  
 그냥 두다  
 괜찮아.  
 어떻게 해...?

as (they) grow up/as (they)  
 get bigger  
 getting smaller  
 to enlarge  
 small bedroom  
 more  
 storage  
 to get rid of  
 bathroom  
 to let it (them) be  
 It's okay. (non-pol.)  
 How will you ... ? (non-pol.)

## 11D. KEY PHRASES

Now let's learn some key vocabulary for items of furniture and rooms around the house.

침실	bedroom
방	bedroom, room
부엌	kitchen
발코니	balcony
창문	window
거실	living room
가구	furniture
책상	desk
침대	bed
화장대	bureau
의자	chair
식탁	dining table
소파	sofa
책장	bookshelf
오디오	audio (stereo) set
냉장고	refrigerator

## 11E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

### Typical Living Environment in Korea

Many Americans are surprised by the environment of Korean housing especially those who come from a spacious home environment. Koreans have been building apartments continuously since the Korean War in order to supply more efficient housing for a large population. This apartment-building boom was initially an economic solution to satisfy most people's need for comfortable housing, but it has recently become the norm to build a house in Korea. The typical Korean family (parents and one or two children) lives in small-to-medium-sized two- or three-bedroom apartments. This is in stark contrast to years past, when the traditional living situation often included the extended family: uncles, aunts, and grandparents.

## 11F. GRAMMAR

### Sentence Ending with Comment -네/-네요

As you've learned so far in this course, Korean sentence endings mark different grammatical functions and deliver different nuances. Let's outline the endings we've learned so far before we introduce a new one.

-아요/-어요	polite familiar ending
-아/-어	non-polite familiar ending
-습니다	polite formal ending
-습니까	polite formal question ending
-세요	polite positive command
-지 마세요	polite negative command
-요	polite short form ending

In this lesson, we'll learn a new ending: -네/-네요. -네/-네요 is commonly used when a speaker is commenting on a situational change or a person's looks. -네 is used between friends; -네요 is the polite form. -네요 is also used for commenting, but is used to comment on older people, as it is accompanied by the polite element -요.

COMMENT ENDING -네/-네요	
verb + -네	non-polite comment
verb + -네요	polite comment

Here are some examples of the non-polite comment ending used in sentences. Notice how it is used with the different tenses you've learned so far. When -네 is used with the future tense, -겠- is attached before -네.

얼굴이 아주 좋아졌네!	<i>You look great! (lit., Your face became very good!)</i>
아이들이 크네!	<i>(Your) children are big!</i>
아이들이 크겠네!	<i>(Your) children will be big!</i>
집이 넓네!	<i>(Your) house is large!</i>
집이 넓겠네!	<i>(Your) house will be large!</i>
괜찮네!	<i>That's okay! (I am fine!)</i>
괜찮겠네!	<i>That will be okay!</i>

### Successive Action -면서

-면서 is a conjunction marking either a continuous action or two actions taking place together simultaneously. Its function is similar to the English "as..." or "while..." It comes after the final verb in the first phrase and before the beginning of the second phrase. Some examples of its use are provided below.

CONTINUOUS/SIMULTANEOUS ACTION CONJUNCTION -면서	
아이들이 크면서 집이 작아져요.	<i>As the children grow, the house gets smaller.</i>
운동을 하면서 물을 마셔요.	<i>While exercising, I drink water.</i>
백화점에 가면서 은행에도 가요.	<i>When I go to the department store, I'll go to the bank too.</i>

### It Seems That . . . -ㄴ/은 것 같다 and -는 것 같다

-ㄴ/은 것 같다 is used to describe a speaker's current assumption about something that happened in the past. It is attached to the verb root without the past tense marker that you learned previously. Again, there is a variation on this expression, depending on whether the verb ends in a vowel or a consonant. The English verb "seem" is usually accompanied by "that." The Korean expression "it seems" is also accompanied by 것, which functions similarly to the relative clause pronoun "that" in English.

### VERB ENDING WITH A VOWEL + -ㄴ 것 같다

간 것 같다 *It seems that she/he/they went . . .*

### VERB ENDING WITH A CONSONANT + -은 것 같다

늦은 것 같다 *It seems that she/he/they was/were late . . .*

Here are some examples of expressions using -ㄴ/은 것 같다.

올케가 시장에 간 것 같다. *It seems that my older brother's wife went to the market. (a female speaker)*

식중독인 것 같다. *It seems that it was food poisoning.*

회를 먹은 것 같다. *It seems that someone ate sushi.*

There is also a present progressive tense of this expression: -는 것 같다. It is formed in the same way as its past tense equivalent; there is no modification for vowel/consonant endings. Here are some examples of the expression -는 것 같다.

그가 집에 가는 것 같다. *It seems that he is going home.*

은지가 공부를 시작하는 것 같다. *It seems that Eunji is starting to study.*

민호가 점심을 먹는 것 같다. *It seems that Minho is eating lunch.*

### Compound Verbs with -하다

In previous lessons we have seen how the verb -하다 is frequently used in compound verbs. Compound verbs refer to the phenomenon when two verbs come together and act as another verb (e.g., "go fishing"). It is a common phenomenon in Korean, and the verb -하다 is a productive verb in forming a compound. The following chart shows the compound verbs with -하다 that we have studied so far.

공부하다	<i>to study</i>
필요하다	<i>to be needed</i>



영어하다	<i>to speak English</i>
가능하다	<i>to be possible</i>
잘하다	<i>to do well</i>
일하다	<i>to work</i>
이상하다	<i>to be strange</i>
깜빡하다	<i>to forget</i>

The following words are only some of the examples of words that are combined with -하다 to form a verb.

못하다	<i>not to do well</i>
노래하다	<i>to sing</i>
말하다	<i>to speak</i>
청소하다	<i>to clean</i>

-하다 is also used when borrowing English words to create a Korean verb.

리모델링하다	<i>to remodel</i>
업데이트하다	<i>to update</i>
조깅하다	<i>to jog</i>

## 11G. READING

The following is a note for a house remodeling plan. Underline and translate the words that you recognize.

집 리모델링 계획:

1. 큰방: 넓힌다
2. 작은 방: 가구 교환
3. 화장실: 욕조 바꾸기
4. 화장실 창문: 교체
5. 안방: 창문을 더 만든다
6. 정문: 신발장을 만든다

## House Remodeling Plan

1. Living room: expand it
2. Bedroom: exchange furniture
3. Bathroom: replace the bathtub
4. Bathroom window: move
5. Inner room: adjust it based on the window
6. Front gate: turn into a shoe closet

## NEW VOCABULARY

교환	<i>exchange</i>
욕조	<i>bathtub</i>
교체	<i>replace(ment)</i>
신발장	<i>shoe closet</i>
정문	<i>front gate</i>

## 11H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

### Country Houses and Public Baths

At the beginning of the 21st century, there was a trend for the wealthier people of Seoul to build country houses in the suburbs. These houses are called 전원주택, literally meaning "rural house." People build this type of house for weekend getaways or to be used as a summer house. Some people invest a lot of money in the construction of these rural houses in preparation for their retirement. Most wish to trade in an exhausting metropolitan life in Seoul for the quiet solitude of a rural house in the countryside upon their retirement. These country houses are usually large in size, with spacious front and back yards. Some people grow vegetables in their gardens using their own organic methods.

It is also quite typical in Korea to find public bath facilities near these rural houses, as well as in the cities. The public bath is often supplied with the water from hot springs. There are many places in Korea where hot springs are available for bath facilities. The public bath is divided into two sections: women's and men's. The women and the men change their clothes separately and use separate public bathtubs. The big public bathtub is usually located at the center of the facility. Some public baths have a service person to provide a soothing massage. Many foreigners feel odd taking their clothes off in front of others, but Koreans never seem to mind this!

**EXERCISES**

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

생각이네    작아져서    그냥    올 봄    넓히려고

- A. 집을 고치려고?  
 B. 응. \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 부터 좀 고쳐보려고. 아이들이 크면서  
 집이 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. 어디를 고치려고?  
 B. 여기 이 안방을 좀 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. 그리고?  
 B. 그리고 이 작은 방 옆에 있는 창고를 없애고 방으로  
 만들려고.  
 A. 좋은 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 화장실은?  
 B. 화장실은 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 둘 거야.

B. Combine the two phrases using the conjunction -면서.

1. (1) 가구를 사다                      (2) 의자를 사다  
 → \_\_\_\_\_  
 2. (1) 친구를 만나다                  (2) 점심을 먹다  
 → \_\_\_\_\_  
 3. (1) 회사에 가다                      (2) 은행에 가다  
 → \_\_\_\_\_  
 4. (1) 공부를 하다                      (2) 음악을 듣는다  
 → \_\_\_\_\_  
 5. (1) 안방을 넓히다                    (2) 창문을 만든다  
 → \_\_\_\_\_

C. Fill in the blanks with the best particles from the list below.

을    를    에    은    는    이    가

1. 올케는 지금 시장 \_\_\_\_\_ 갔어.  
 2. 어디 \_\_\_\_\_ 고치려고?  
 3. 여기 이 안방 \_\_\_\_\_ 좀 넓히려고.

4. 작은 방 옆 \_\_\_\_\_ 있는 창고를 없애려고.  
 5. 그럼, 화장실 \_\_\_\_\_ 어떻게 해?

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.

1. I heard you have a plan to remodel this house?  
 2. I intend to remove the storage over there.  
 3. I'll leave the bathroom as is.  
 4. My children are okay.  
 5. That's a good idea!

**ANSWER KEY**

**Comprehension Practice**

1. a) 은지오빠                      2. c) 시장                      3. c) 방을 만든다  
 4. "Bathroom" is "화장실."    5. "안방" means "master bedroom."

**Exercises**

- A. 1. 올 봄    2. 작아져서    3. 넓히려고    4. 생각이네    5. 그냥  
 B. 1. 가구를 사면서 의자를 사다    2. 친구를 만나면서 점심을 먹다  
 3. 회사에 가면서 은행에 가다    4. 공부를 하면서 음악을 듣는다  
 5. 안방을 넓히면서 창문을 만든다  
 C. 1. 에    2. 를    3. 을    4. 에    5. 은  
 D. 1. 이 집을 리모델링 할 계획이 있다면?  
 2. 저기 창고를 없애려고 해.  
 3. 화장실은 그냥 두려고 해.  
 4. 아이들은 괜찮아.  
 5. 좋은 생각이네!

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Write a journal entry about your dream house! Describe the location and the size of your house, as well as the type and number of rooms your dream house will contain. When using number expressions, don't forget to use noun counters at the end of the number, such as -개, for counting rooms and other general household objects. Make a list of items you need to furnish your house, including a chair, a sofa, a TV, a computer, bookshelves, and more. Draw the layout of the house next to your journal entry. As extra practice, try using the new expressions and endings you've learned in conversation with a Korean speaker, or simply write down the phrases you come up with in your journal.

## LESSON

# 12

## 할머니의 생신

### Grandmother's Birthday

In this lesson, we will learn Korean family terms and titles for relatives. Grammar lessons will include a non-polite question ending, -니, and a non-polite suggestive ending, -자. You will learn clear polite/non-polite distinctions, as well as more present tense expressions. Let's get started with a vocabulary warm-up!

#### 12A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

어떻게 해요?	<i>What should (we) do? (pol.)</i>
가까운 분들을 초대하자.	<i>Let's invite relatives and close friends.</i>
좋을까요?	<i>Will it be good to ... ?</i>
...어떨까?	<i>What about ... ? (non-pol.)</i>
뭐가 좋겠니?	<i>What would be good? (non-pol.)</i>
좋은 생각이 있어요!	<i>I have a good idea!</i>
새 한복	<i>new hanbok (Korean traditional costume)</i>

#### 12B. DIALOGUE

Minho is at his mother's house discussing his grandmother's birthday party next week. Minho and his mother are planning to invite all of their relatives.

민호: 어머니, 할머니 생신이 다음 주 주말인데, 어떻게 해요?

어머니: 글썄, 우선 친척들과 가까운 분들을 초대하자. 할머니, 할아버지, 큰아버지, 큰어머니, 그리고 사촌들은 물론이고.

민호: 어디서 파티를 하는 게 좋을까요?

어머니: 신라 호텔에서 하는 게 어떨까?

- 민호: 거기 말고, 시내에 있는 조선 호텔은 어때요?  
 어머니: 거기가 더 낫겠니?  
 민호: 네, 다음 주에 거기에서 신나는 서커스 쇼가 있다고 들었어요.  
 어머니: 그럼, 거기로 하자. 큰아버지, 큰어머니 내외분하고, 둘째 큰아버지, 둘째 큰어머니께서는 네가 전화를 걸어.  
 민호: 네, 알겠어요. 그럼 어머니께서는 작은 삼촌하고 작은 외숙모께 전화를 거세요. 사촌들은 자기들이 알아서 올 거예요.  
 어머니: 할머니 선물은 뭐가 좋겠니?  
 민호: 저에게 좋은 생각이 있어요! 한복을 새로 해 드려요!

- Minho:** *Mother, grandmother's birthday is next weekend; what should we do?*  
**Mother:** *Well, first of all, let's invite our relatives and close friends—Grandmother, Grandfather, your older uncle and aunt, and your cousins, of course.*  
**Minho:** *Where would be a good place to throw the party?*  
**Mother:** *How about Hotel Shilla?*  
**Minho:** *Not that place, but how about Hotel Chosun in the city?*  
**Mother:** *Would that place be better?*  
**Minho:** *Yes, I heard that they have a fun circus show over there.*  
**Mother:** *Well then, let's decide on that place. You call older Uncle and Aunt (Uncle's couple), and second oldest Uncle and Aunt.*  
**Minho:** *Yes, I see. Then Mother, you call younger Uncle and Aunt, please. All the cousins will come, having heard (knowing) of the birthday party.*  
**Mother:** *What will be a good present for your grandmother?*  
**Minho:** *I got a good idea! Let's give her a new hanbok!*

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- Who will not be invited?  
 a) 큰아버지                      b) 사촌들                      c) 할아버지
- What will be happening at the Hotel Chosun next weekend?  
 a) 한복                              b) 점심                              c) 서커스
- Who will not be coming to the party?  
 a) 큰어머니                      b) 은지                              c) 할아버지
- How do you say "gift"? \_\_\_\_\_.
- "생신" means \_\_\_\_\_.

## 12C. VOCABULARY

-는데	<i>and (used between two events)</i>
할머니	<i>grandmother</i>
할아버지	<i>grandfather</i>
생신	<i>birthday (hon.)</i>
생일	<i>birthday (for younger people)</i>
우선	<i>first of all</i>
초대하다	<i>to invite</i>
초대하자	<i>Let's invite ... (infml.)</i>
ㄹ까	<i>ending used for an undecided future</i>
친척들	<i>relatives</i>
사촌들	<i>cousins</i>
물론이다	<i>of course</i>
어디서...하는게 좋을까요?	<i>Where would be good to ...? (pol.)</i>
시내	<i>city/downtown</i>
어떨까? (어떻다)	<i>How about ...? (infml.)</i>
큰아버지	<i>older uncle (father's older brother)</i>
큰어머니	<i>older aunt (father's older brother's wife)</i>
내외분	<i>a husband and a wife (hon.)</i>

드릴 (드리다)	<i>will give (to someone)</i>
선물	<i>gift</i>
받아라 (받다)	<i>receive it (non-polite)</i>
낫겠니? (낫다)	<i>Will it be better?</i>
아버지	<i>father</i>
전화를 걸어 (걸다)	<i>make a phone call (non-polite)</i>
자기들	<i>themselves</i>
좋겠니? (좋다)	<i>What would be good?</i>
좋은 생각	<i>good idea</i>
한복	<i>hanbok (traditional Korean dress)</i>
열심히	<i>diligently</i>
준비	<i>preparation</i>
-고	<i>ending indicating a quotation</i>

## 12D. KEY PHRASES

Family relationships are very important in Korea. It is no surprise then that they have a rather well-developed naming system for relatives. The names for paternal relatives are optionally accompanied by a paternal affix.

외-	<i>affix for maternal side relatives</i>
친-	<i>affix for paternal side relatives</i>
어머니	<i>mother</i>
아버지	<i>father</i>
언니	<i>older sister (for a female speaker)</i>
누나	<i>older sister (for a male speaker)</i>
오빠	<i>older brother (for a female speaker)</i>
형	<i>older brother (for a male speaker)</i>
동생	<i>younger sibling</i>
외할머니	<i>grandmother (mother's side)</i>
외할아버지	<i>grandfather (mother's side)</i>
외사촌	<i>cousin (mother's side)</i>

사촌	<i>cousin (father's side)</i>
외삼촌	<i>unmarried uncle (mother's side)</i>
삼촌	<i>unmarried uncle (father's side)</i>
외숙모	<i>uncle's wife (mother's side)</i>
숙모	<i>uncle's wife (father's side)</i>
이모	<i>mother's sister</i>
이모부	<i>mother's sister's husband</i>
고모	<i>father's sister</i>
고모부	<i>father's sister's husband</i>

## 12E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Koreans call family members by their titles (their relationship to the speaker) and not by their first names. It is similar to Americans calling their mothers "Mom" and not typically by their mother's name. An older brother would be called 형 if you are a man and 오빠 if you are a woman. An older sister would be called 언니 if you are a woman and 누나 if you are a man. Unlike the rest of Korean grammar, these terms are gender sensitive depending on both the speaker and the listener. There is one term for a younger sibling, regardless of the gender of either the speaker or the listener: 동생.

Koreans also use names with an ending. After a name ending in a consonant, add -아, and after a name ending in a vowel, add -야. These are only attached to a person's first name: 현숙아, 기철아, 꽃님아, or 민수야, 은지야, 영호야, etc. This ending only applies when the person is a friend or younger person. It is rude to call older people directly by their names in Korean culture, so Koreans substitute the name with the person's title, such as 선생님, 손님 (Mr. client), or put -씨 after his or her name.

## 12F. GRAMMAR

### Present Tense Formation and the Progressive -고 있-

Korean present tense is expressed in three ways: (1) non-tense + ending, (2) -L/는다, and (3) -고 있 + ending.

#### (1) NON-TENSE + ENDING

The non-tense form is a verb infinitive plus some kind of ending. This form is used to describe the actions taken.



가요.	(I/We/You/She/He/They) go/goes.
먹어요.	(I/We/You/She/He/They) eat/eats.
운동해요.	(I/We/You/She/He/They) exercise/exercises.

**(2) -ㄴ/는다**

-ㄴ/는다 is used to describe a current event using the simple present tense. This has the effect of a more vivid description than the plain non-tense form.

간다!	(I/We/You/He/She/They) go/goes (now)!
먹는다!	(I/We/You/He/She/They) eat/eats (now)!
운동한다!	(I/We/You/He/She/They) exercise/exercises (now)!

**(3) -고 있-**

“-고 있+ (tense marker) + ending” is close to the progressive form, which in English is expressed as “to be + verb + -ing.” In Korean, this form indicates that an action has already begun and is still taking place at the time.

가고 있다	am/is/are going
먹고 있다	am/is/are eating
운동하고 있다	am/is/are exercising

The different levels of politeness can accompany this progressive form, and tense markers can be used to form the past and future progressive tenses.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE	
가고 있다	am/is/are going (politeness non-marked)
가고 있어요	am/is/are going (polite/infml.)
가고 있습니다	am/is/are going (polite/fml.)

PAST PROGRESSIVE	
가고 있었어요	was/were going (polite/infml.)
가고 있었습니다	was/were going (polite/fml.)

FUTURE PROGRESSIVE	
가고 있을게요.	(I/We) will be going ... (polite)
가고 있을 거예요.	(I/We/He/She/They) will be going ... (polite)

**Question Endings -니? and -ㅂ/습니까?**

You have so far observed that a raised tone at the end of a sentence can create an inexplicit question ending in various situations. To ask an explicit question in Korean, you will need to use a question ending, either -니? or -ㅂ/습니까?. -니 is used when speaking to a younger person or to a friend, so it is called an informal, non-polite question marker. When directing a question to a person who is older than you, to someone of a higher position, or in formal situations, use -ㅂ/습니까?

QUESTION ENDINGS -니 AND -ㅂ/습니까?	
가 + 니? = 가니?	Are you going? (to a friend/a younger person)
먹 + 니? = 먹니?	Are you eating? (to a friend/a younger person)
가 + ㅂ니까? = 갑니까?	Are you going? (to an older person)
먹 + ㅂ니까? = 먹습니까?	Are you eating? (to an older person)

Make sure you are careful when using the informal forms. Some people might take offense at overly informal Korean usage.

음악을 들으면서 집에 가니?	Are you going home while listening to the music? (between friends)
왜 그렇게 점심을 빨리 먹니?	Why are you eating lunch so quickly? (between friends)



우리는 버스를 타고  
부산으로 갑니까?

*Are we riding a bus to go  
to Busan? (formal relations)*

미국에서는 아침을  
언제 먹습니까?

*When do you eat breakfast  
in the U.S.? (formal relations)*

### Non-polite Suggestive -자 and Polite Suggestive -하십시오

To suggest an action to someone, you will need to use a suggestive verb ending following the verb stem. This is similar to the expression "let's..." in English.

#### NON-POLITE SUGGESTIVE -자

들어가 + 자 = 들어가자. *Let's go in.*

먹 + 자 = 먹자. *Let's eat.*

공부하 + 자 = 공부하자. *Let's study.*

#### POLITE SUGGESTIVE -자

들어가 + 하십시오 =  
들어갑시다. *Let's go in.*

먹 + 하십시오 = 먹읍시다. *Let's eat.*

공부하 + 하십시오 =  
공부합시다. *Let's study.*

### More Korean Postpositions and Verb Endings

You were introduced to some new postpositions and verb endings in the dialogue; let's take a look at three of them here.

a) **ㄴ데** is a postposition meaning "and" when used between two events.

할머니 생신이 다음 주  
주말인데, 어떻게 해요?

*Grandmother's birthday is next  
weekend, (and) what should  
we do?*

b) **ㄹ까** = verb ending used for an undecided future.

어디서 파티를 하는  
게 좋을까요?

*Where would be a good place  
to throw the party?*

c) **고** at the end of the clause acts as quotation marker.

다음 주에 거기에서  
신나는서커스 쇼가  
있다고 들었어요.

*I heard that they have a fun  
circus show over there. ("They  
have a fun circus show over  
there," I heard.)*

## 12G. READING

The following is an invitation from Youngho's aunt. Underline and translate the family-related terms that you know.

영호아,

잘 있었니?

이번 할아버지 생신에 가족들이 다 모이기로 했다. 네 아이들도 데리고 큰아버지 집으로 와. 거기에 큰어머니와 이모, 이모부, 그리고 네 사촌들이 모두 올거야. 나도 갈게!

*Dear Youngho,*

*How have you been?*

*All of the family members decided to get together for Grandfather's birthday party. Come with your children to older Uncle's house. Older Aunt, (mother's side) Aunt and Uncle, and your cousins all will come. I'll go too!*

## 12H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

### Korean Familism and the Parent-Child Bond

The strong family bond among Koreans is called "familism." Understanding Korean familism is important for understanding various social relations in Korean culture. Koreans are educated to revere, respect, and learn from their parents, grandparents, and other older relatives. Parents, grandparents, and other older relatives give love and support to their children, nephews, and nieces both financially and emotionally. While children are still in school, Korean parents conventionally support their children's school-related exercises as much as they can.

The financial involvement of parents with their children in most parts of the Western world ends when children reach the age of eighteen. Beyond this age, most children are on their own and begin to lead an independent life. In contrast, Korean parents feel obligated to take care of their children until the children are married. In other words, Korean parents acknowledge adulthood at the point of marriage. Wedding expenses—including the ceremony fee and gifts to families—are paid by the parents and close relatives, with the help of their children.

In return, it is the children who take care of the parents in Korea as they get older. The children assume this responsibility up to the death of the parent, no matter how difficult the care might be. The adult children feel obligated to take care of their parents as their parents took care of them when they were young. This family bond is a very strong facet of Korean culture and an important factor in understanding Koreans and their lives.

## EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

들어가자    선물    안녕하세요    있었니    준비

어머니: 식사 \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 다 됐는데, 다들 언제 오시지?

민호: 저기 할아버지 오신다! 할아버지, \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_!

할아버지: 오, 그래. 잘 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_?

민호: 네, 그럼요.

할아버지: \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_, 여기 어머니에게 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 받아라.

민호: 네.

B. Follow the example to make the informal non-polite suggestive "Let's..." expression by modifying the given sentences.

Example: 동생하고 먹는다 → 동생하고 먹자!

1. 언니하고 간다 → \_\_\_\_\_!
2. 차 타고 온다 → \_\_\_\_\_!
3. 집 안에 들어간다 → \_\_\_\_\_!
4. 빨리 준비한다 → \_\_\_\_\_!
5. 저녁 식사한다 → \_\_\_\_\_!

C. Translate the following Korean phrases into English.

1. 잘 있었니?
2. 저기 큰 아버지 내외분도 오시네!
3. 요즘 공부는 재미있니?
4. 벌써 했어요.
5. 할아버지 할머니께 인사했니?

D. Fill in the blanks with the calling particles.

(example) 민호 → 민호야!

1. 정수 → \_\_\_\_\_
2. 선미 → \_\_\_\_\_
3. 태권 → \_\_\_\_\_
4. 희진 → \_\_\_\_\_
5. 수영 → \_\_\_\_\_

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. b) 사촌들                      2. c) 서커스            3. b) 은지
4. "Gift" is "선물."
5. "생신" means "birthday."

### Exercises

- A. 1. 준비    2. 안녕하세요    3. 있었니    4. 들어가자    5. 선물
- B. 1. 언니하고 가자    2. 차 타고 오자    3. 집 안에 들어가자    4. 빨리 준비하자    5. 저녁 식사하자
- C. 1. Have you being doing well?  
2. There, Uncle and Aunt are coming!  
3. Is studying fun these days?  
4. I already did.  
5. Did you greet your grandfather and grandmother?
- D. 1. 정수야!    2. 선미야!    3. 태권아!    4. 희진아!    5. 수영아!

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

First, draw a family tree using the Korean vocabulary for family members. Then, to practice the present forms you've learned, describe what each family member has been doing recently. Use all three present forms—(1) non-tense form with an ending, (2) ㄴ/는다, and (3) -고 있 + ending—to create your text. Use all the vocabulary that you have learned in this lesson, including the terms for relatives on both your father's side and your mother's side of the family.

## LESSON

# 13

## 제주도 여행

### A Trip to Jeju Island

In this lesson, we will learn traveling terms and more expressions related to time. We'll learn about the famous tourist attraction Jeju Island in the dialogue, and how to say "to become" and "to be able to" in the grammar sections. Let's get started with a vocabulary warm-up!

#### 13A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

비행기표 예약했어요.	<i>I reserved the ticket.</i>
왕복	<i>round trip</i>
값이 비싸질 거예요.	<i>The price will become expensive.</i>
휴가 낼 수 있어요?	<i>Can you ask for a vacation?</i>
말씀드려보겠어요.	<i>I will try to ask.</i>
제 대학 동창이에요.	<i>(He) is my college friend.</i>
아침 일찍	<i>early in the morning</i>
부럽다!	<i>I'm jealous!</i>

#### 13B. DIALOGUE

For her summer vacation, Eunji is planning a trip to Jeju Island, the famous south seaside attraction in Korea. Chris is curious about her plans.

크리스: 은지씨, 이번 여름에 어디에 가세요?

은지: 제주도에 가요. 지금 비행기표 예약했어요!

크리스: 제주도 비행기표는 얼마예요?

은지: 왕복에 14만원 쯤 해요. 곧 값이 비싸질 거예요.

크리스: 아, 저도 가고 싶어요. 언제 떠나요?

- 은지: 7월 24일부터 4일간이요. 그 때 휴가 낼 수 있어요?
- 크리스: 과장님께 한번 말씀드려 보겠어요. 누구하고 같이 가요?
- 은지: 네, 제 친구들 두 명하고 같이 가요. 진희하고 성훈이에요.
- 크리스: 진희 씨만 지난 번에 만난 것 같은데...
- 은지: 성훈이는 제 대학 동창이에요. 아주 재미있는 친구예요.
- 크리스: 그래요? 비행기 시간은 언제예요?
- 은지: 네, 24일 오전 10시 비행기예요. 아침 일찍 떠나서 놀 거예요.
- 크리스: 와, 부럽다! 저도 가고 싶어요!

- Chris: *Eunji, where are you going this summer?*
- Eunji: *I am going to Jeju Island. I just now reserved the ticket!*
- Chris: *How much is it to go to Jeju?*
- Eunji: *Around 14000 won for a round trip. The price will become expensive soon.*
- Chris: *Ah, I'd like to go too. When are you leaving?*
- Eunji: *From July 24th, for four days. Can you take a vacation at that time?*
- Chris: *I will try to ask to our section chief. Who are you going with?*
- Eunji: *Yeah, I'm going with two of my friends. Jin Hee and Seong Hoon.*
- Chris: *It seems that I've only met Jin Hee...*
- Eunji: *Seong Hoon is my college friend. He is a funny friend.*
- Chris: *Is that so? What time is your flight?*
- Eunji: *Yeah, the flight is at 10 a.m. (We'll) leave early in the morning and play!*
- Chris: *Wow, I'm envious! I'd like to go too!*

### Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- With whom is Eunji going on summer vacation?  
a) 민지하고 철수      b) 크리스      c) 진희하고 성훈
- What does Chris say in response to Eunji's last line, when she tells him they're off to play?  
a) 언제 떠나요?      b) 그래요?      c) 와, 부럽다!
- When are they leaving for Jeju Island?  
a) 7월 24일      b) 7월 28일      c) 7월 14일
- "휴가" means \_\_\_\_\_.
- "왕복" means \_\_\_\_\_.

### 13C. VOCABULARY

여행	trip
여름	summer
-도	island
제주도	Jeju Island
비행기	flight
표	ticket
비행기표	plane ticket
예약하다	to reserve
-쯤	about (amount)
곧	soon
값	price
비싸지다	to become expensive
떠나다	to leave
-간	duration of time, during
-때	when, time
휴가	vacation
휴가내다	to leave for a vacation
-르 수 있다	to be able to
과장님	section chief
-께	to (someone) (hon.)

말씀드리다	<i>to tell/to ask</i>
-어/아 보다	<i>to try</i>
대학 동창	<i>friend from the same class at the university</i>
오전	<i>a.m.</i>
일찍	<i>early</i>
놀다	<i>to play</i>
부럽다	<i>to be envious</i>

### 13D. KEY PHRASES

The following phrases are essential expressions for travelling. You will be likely hear many of these expressions at any Korean airport.

비행기	<i>airplane, flight</i>
비행기 시간이 언제예요?	<i>When is the flight?</i>
비행기 연착됐습니다.	<i>The flight is delayed.</i>
도착 시간이 지연되겠습니다.	<i>The arrival is going to be delayed.</i>
항공	<i>airline</i>
대한 항공	<i>Korean Airlines</i>
아시아나 항공	<i>Asiana Airlines</i>
편도표	<i>one-way ticket</i>
왕복표	<i>round-trip ticket</i>
도착하다	<i>to arrive</i>
출발하다	<i>to depart</i>
탑승시간	<i>boarding time</i>
발권대	<i>ticket-issuing desk</i>
안내소	<i>information desk</i>
공항 대기실	<i>airport waiting room</i>
세관	<i>customs</i>
금연 구역	<i>non-smoking area</i>
가판대	<i>newsstand</i>

Air travel isn't the only means of traveling around Korea. Study the following list of other essential travel terms.

기차	<i>train</i>
기차역	<i>train station</i>
버스	<i>bus</i>
버스 정류장	<i>bus stop</i>
버스 터미널	<i>bus station/terminal</i>
(자동)차	<i>(automobile) car</i>
렌트카	<i>rental car</i>
배	<i>boat, ship</i>
여객선	<i>ferry</i>
유람선	<i>cruise</i>
여권	<i>passport</i>
비자	<i>visa</i>
여행 가방	<i>suitcase</i>
호텔	<i>hotel</i>
예약	<i>reservation</i>
즐거운 여행되세요!	<i>Have a nice trip!</i>

### 13E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

#### Airline Companies in Korea

There are two major airlines in Korea: Korean Airlines and Asiana Airlines. Asiana Airlines began business in 1988, far later than Korean Airlines, but has recently gained a good reputation and is competing well with Korean Airlines. Traveling to and from Korea is mostly done by plane, but people from some neighboring countries—such as China or Japan—sometimes travel by boat as well. Flights from the United States to Incheon National Airport usually take 14 to 20+ hours, depending on the connecting flight schedule and the point of departure. Getting around Korea is easy and convenient using public transportation such as train, bus, car, taxi, or plane.

### 13F. GRAMMAR

#### Expressing Ability: -ㄹ/을 수 있다

-ㄹ/을 수 있다 is used in Korean to express one's ability. It is similar to the English "can" or "to be able to." If the preceding sound is a vowel, use -ㄹ 수 있다, and if the preceding sound is a consonant, use -을 수 있다.

VERB + -ㄹ/을 수 있다 = TO BE ABLE TO + VERB	
가 + ㄹ 수 있다 = 갈 수 있다	<i>to be able to go</i>
만나 + ㄹ 수 있다 = 만날 수 있다	<i>to be able to meet</i>
늦 + 을 수 있다 = 늦을 수 있다	<i>to be able to be late</i>
받 + 을 수 있다 = 받을 수 있다	<i>to be able to receive</i>

인천에 언제쯤 갈 수 있겠어요?	<i>When will you be able to go to Incheon?</i>
월요일에 팀장님을 만날 수 있었어요.	<i>I was able to meet the team chief on Monday.</i>
이렇게 천천히 가면 늦을 수 있겠어요!	<i>We could be late if we go like this!</i>
세 시까지 이 가방들을 다 받을 수 있겠어요?	<i>Will you be able to receive this luggage by three o'clock?</i>

### To Become: -어/아 지다

-어/아 지다 is a form that indicates a change in status or situation. It is similar to the English expressions "to become" or "to turn (into)." The verb's sound quality alternates the choice of the ending. The bright vowels, such as 아, 오, etc., will take -아 지다, whereas dark vowels, such as 어, 우, and 이, will take -어 지다.

ADJECTIVAL VERB -어/아 지다 = BECOME . . . /TURN INTO . . .	
비싸다 + 아 지다 = 비싸지다 (1)	<i>to become expensive</i>
좋다 + 아 지다 = 좋아지다	<i>to become good</i>
나쁘다 + 아 지다 = 나빠지다 (2)	<i>to become bad</i>
작다 + 아 지다 = 작아지다	<i>to become small</i>

넓다 + 어 지다 = 넓어지다	<i>to become large</i>
아프다 + 아 지다 = 아파지다 (2)	<i>to become sick</i>
가능하다 + 아 지다 = 가능해지다 (3)	<i>to become possible</i>
이상하다 + 아 지다 = 이상해지다	<i>to become strange</i>
어렵다 + 어 지다 = 어려워지다 (4)	<i>to become difficult</i>
재미있 + 어 지다 = 재미있어지다	<i>to become funny</i>

- (1) Two As will be contracted to one 아 sound.
- (2) Weak vowel 으 from the verb stem drops.
- (3) All -하다 verbs will follow 해 지다.
- (4) Bottom ㅁ usually undergoes a sound change into 우 (w) sound due to the features of Korean phonology.

꽃이 많이 비싸졌네요!	<i>The price of the flowers got really expensive!</i>
크리스씨, 한국어 공부는 많이 좋아지셨어요?	<i>Chris, did your Korean studies get a lot better?</i>
요즘 눈이 너무 나빠지는 거 같아요.	<i>My eyes are getting bad these days.</i>

### The Future Gradual: Expressing "Will Become"

The Future Gradual is used in Korean to express a gradual change that takes place in the future. Take a look at the following formula:

(Descriptive verb) + 지 + ㄹ 거예요 = will become (descriptive verb)

The 질거예요 portion of this pattern shows a combination of two grammatical forms. First, -지 is used to refer to a gradual change ("become/turn into"), and the second part -ㄹ 거예요 signifies that the act takes place in the future. Let's look at how this is used in complete sentences.



비싸+지+ㄹ거예요 = 비싸질 거예요.	<i>It will become expensive.</i>
추워질 거예요.	<i>It will become cold.</i>
커질거예요.	<i>It will become big.</i>

**Expressing Attempt: -어/아 보다**

When attached to a Korean verb, -어/아 보다 is used to express an attempt to perform the action explained in the verb. -아 보다 follows bright vowels (아, 오, etc), and -어 보다 follows dark vowels (우, 어, 이, etc).

VERB + 어/아 보다 = TRY VERB + -ING	
가+보다 = 가 보다	<i>try going</i>
받+아 보다 + 받아 보다	<i>try receiving</i>
예약하+아 보다 = 예약해 보다*	<i>try reserving</i>
먹+어 보다 = 먹어 보다	<i>try eating</i>

\* All 하다 verbs will change into 해보다.

극장에 한 번 가 볼 게요.	<i>I'll try going to the movie theater.</i>
이메일을 받아 보겠어요?	<i>Will you be receiving the email?</i>
제가 예약 해 봤어요.	<i>I tried reserving.</i>
이 음식은 처음 먹어 보는데요.	<i>It's the first time for me to try this food.</i>

**Dates**

Dates in Korean are expressed in the following order: year, month, day. You need to place year (년), month (월), and the day (일) after each number.

2008 년 5 월 7 일	<i>May 7th, 2008</i>
2035 년 8 월 29 일	<i>August 29th, 2035</i>
1876 년 1월 14 일	<i>January 14th, 1876</i>

**13G. READING**

The following is an itinerary for travel to a Korean island called 울릉도, which is located on the East Coast, between Korea and Japan. Some of the words are the area names of actual Korean locations and some of the words are English loan words; try saying these new words out loud to see which words are which.

날짜	지역	교통편	시간	여행일정
제1일	서울 묵호 울릉도	버스  페리	6.30	덕수궁 정문 앞 출발
			9.00	아침식사
			10.00	묵호출발
			12.20	울릉도 도착
			13.00	점심 식사
제2일	울릉도	유람선 미니버스	15.00	약수공원 및 케이블 카 (향토사료관, 독도기념관, 약수물 마시기등)
			18.00	저녁 식사 (특별식 - 약소불고기) 숙소 - 한국 리조트호텔
			7.30	아침 식사
			8.30	육로관광 여행 (4시간 소요), 성인봉
			13.00	점심 식사 (특별식-홍합밥)
			14.00	봉래 폭포
			16.00	섬 일주 유람선 - 약 2시간 소요
			18.30	저녁 식사 (특별식 - 오징어 물회) 숙소 - 울릉도 호텔

Date	Place	Transportation	Time	Travel Activities
First day	Seoul	Bus	6.30	Start at Deoksu Gung front gate
			9.00	Breakfast
	Mukho	Ferry	10.00	Leave for Mukho
			12.20	Arrive Ulreungdo
	Ulreungdo		13.00	Lunch
			15.00	Yaksu park and cable car ride
			18.00	Dinner (special - medicinal beef bulgogi)
				Lodging - Korea Resort Hotel

Date	Place	Transportation	Time	Travel Activities
Second day	Ulreungdo	Cruise Mini Bus	7:30	Breakfast
			8:30	Tour on foot (four hours), Sung-In peak
			13:00	Lunch (special - Mussel rice)
			14:00	Bong-Rae Fall
			16:00	Island cruise - about two hours
			18:30	Dinner (special - raw squid sushi) Lodging - Ulreungdo Hotel

### 13H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

#### Jeju Island, a Popular Honeymoon Destination

There was a time when Koreans were not allowed to fly freely outside of the country, partly because of *policy exercised under strong Korean military politicians* in the 1970s. These politicians restricted travel, attempting to control the influx of information. It was also uncommon for Koreans to travel outside of Korea because of slow economic development at the time. These days, however, Koreans travel all around the world freely and frequently.

Despite the change in the travel opportunities for Koreans, Jeju Island has been and is still one of the most visited places for Korean honeymooners. Jeju Island is a truly exotic island with its beautiful scenery and peaceful beaches, as well as a tall volcanic mountain at the center—Mountain Hanra. Mountain Hanra is said to have four seasons all at once, depending on where you are on the height of the mountain. In this area, however, the weather changes rapidly without warning, so some say that Mountain Hanra is a dangerous hiking spot for novice hikers. There are many pastures full of strong and sturdy horses surrounding the mountainous region. Jeju has long been known for these horses; Korean kings used to request the highest quality horses be sent to them from Jeju. The other famous attraction is 해녀 (the sea women). The sea women have a unique method of fishing: they jump into the water without the aid of any SCUBA gear and collect seafood from the sea, often to serve the fresh seafood to visitors. Trying the fresh seafood from the sea women is quite a lure to the island!

### EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

과장님	휴가	예약했어요	떠나요	간
-----	----	-------	-----	---

A: 이번 여름에 갈 비행기표는 \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B: 네, 7월 12일 1시에 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_.

A: 얼마 간 있을 거예요?

B: 4일 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 있을 거예요.

A: 저도 가고 싶어요!

B: \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 께 한번 말씀 드려 보세요.

A: \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ 를 낼 수 있을 거예요.

B. Complete the sentences with verb + -르/을 수 있다.

7월에 휴가 내다 → 7월에 휴가 낼 수 있다
---------------------------

1. 6월에 떠나다 → \_\_\_\_\_

2. 선생님께 말씀드려 보다 → \_\_\_\_\_

3. 5시 30분에 만나다 → \_\_\_\_\_

4. 그 사람이 대학 동창이다 → \_\_\_\_\_

5. 진척하고 같이 가다 → \_\_\_\_\_

C. Complete the sentence with -어/아 보았다 as a past form. Choose the best verb from the box.

만나다	예약하다	하다	내다	먹다
-----	------	----	----	----

1. 아침을 제주도에서 \_\_\_\_\_.

2. 3일 동안 휴가를 \_\_\_\_\_.

3. 미국에서 비행기 표를 \_\_\_\_\_.

4. 어제 한국어 공부를 \_\_\_\_\_.

5. 오늘 그 친구를 \_\_\_\_\_.

D. Translate the following English sentences into Korean.

1. Wow, I'm envious! → \_\_\_\_\_

2. I am going with my two friends. → \_\_\_\_\_

3. Seong Hoon is my college friend. → \_\_\_\_\_

4. I'd like to go too! → \_\_\_\_\_  
 5. What time is your flight? → \_\_\_\_\_

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. c) 진희하고 성훈    2. c) 와, 부럽다!    3. a) 7월 24일  
 4. “휴가” means “vacation.”    5. “왕복” means “round trip.”

### Exercises

- A. 1. 예약했어요    2. 떠나요    3. 간    4. 과장님    5. 휴가  
 B. 1. 6월에 떠날 수 있다  
    2. 선생님께 말씀 드려 볼 수 있다  
    3. 5시 30분에 만날 수 있다  
    4. 그 사람이 대학 동창일 수 있다  
    5. 진희하고 같이 갈 수 있다  
 C. 1. 먹어보았다    2. 내어 보았다    3. 예약해 보았다    4. 해 보았다  
    5. 만나보았다  
 D. 1. 와, 부럽네요!  
    2. 제 친구들 두 명하고 같이 가요.  
    3. 성훈이는 제 대학 동창이에요.  
    4. 저도 가고 싶어요!  
    5. 비행기 시간은 언제예요?

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Write up an itinerary for a four-day trip to Jeju Island. You are going on this trip with two Korean friends and two American friends. All of you are currently staying in Seoul, so try to figure out the best way to get there. Find more ideas about Jeju Island from the official Jeju Island Government's Tourism site at <http://tour2jeju.net/>. Write a list of places to visit each day. Budget a trip to be shared by five friends. Use the popular Korean search engine *Empas* at <http://search.empas.com/> to find extra information and facts about Jeju. Enjoy your trip!

In this lesson, you'll learn many restaurant terms and how to order food in Korean. You will also learn how to form causal expressions (because . . .), how to express plans for yourself (I should . . .), and how to express "although" in Korean. Let's get started with some new vocabulary!

#### 14A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

해물파전	<i>seafood-scallion pancake</i>
국수	<i>noodles</i>
비빔밥	<i>bibimbap (rice bowl)</i>
야채 비빔밥	<i>vegetable bibimbap</i>
불고기	<i>bulgogi (Korean BBQ)</i>
맵지 않지요?	<i>It is not spicy? (rhetorical question)</i>
맛있는	<i>delicious</i>
더 맛있어요!	<i>More delicious!</i>

#### 14B. DIALOGUE

Chris and Eunji are sitting at a casual restaurant on a busy Seoul street. It's their lunch break, and they are ordering lunch.

은지: 크리스, 오늘은 뭐 먹고 싶어요?

크리스: 어제는 해물파전을 먹었으니, 오늘은 고기를 먹고 싶어요!

은지: 그래요? 저는 어제 국수를 먹었으니까, 오늘은 좀 다른 거를 먹어야 겠어요.

크리스: 뭐가 좋아요? 혹시 튀김은 어때요?

은지: 튀김은 살이 찌서 안 돼요. 야채를 좀

먹어야 겠어요.

크리스: 그럼, 이 야채 비빔밥은 어때요?

은지: 아, 그게 좋겠네요. 건강에도 좋고.

크리스: 저는 한국 음식 중 제일 맛있는 불고기를 먹을게요.

은지: 불고기가 맵지 않지요.

크리스: 네, 저는 매운 음식을 좋아하지만 한국 음식은 정말 너무 매워요.

은지: 어떤 한국 사람들도 매운 음식은 잘 못 먹어요.

크리스: 미국에서는 제가 먹었던 음식 중 제일 매운 음식이 멕시코 음식이었어요.

은지: 그런데 여기에서 보니까 한국 음식이 더 매워요?

크리스: 네! 그런데 이제는 저도 매운 음식이 더 맛있어요!

**Eunji:** *Chris, what would you like to eat today?*

**Chris:** *Since I ate seafood pancakes yesterday, I'd like to eat meat today!*

**Eunji:** *Is that so? Since I ate noodles yesterday, I should eat something else today.*

**Chris:** *What's good? Some tempura, maybe?*

**Eunji:** *Tempura is fattening. I should eat vegetables.*

**Chris:** *Then how about this vegetable bibimbap?*

**Eunji:** *Ah, that would be good. It's good for your health as well.*

**Chris:** *I will try the most delicious of all Korean foods, bulgogi.*

**Eunji:** *As for bulgogi, it is not spicy.*

**Chris:** *Yes, although I like spicy food, Korean food is really too spicy.*

**Eunji:** *Some Koreans also can't eat spicy foods.*

**Chris:** *In the States, the spiciest food I have ever tried was Mexican food.*

**Eunji:** *But you see from here, is Korean food spicier?*

**Chris:** *Yes, but now, spicy food is more delicious to me too!*

### Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- What did Eunji decided to order?  
a) 야채 튀김                      b) 불고기                      c) 비빔밥
- What does Chris think of Korean food?  
a) 멕시코 음식이 좋아요    b) 한국 음식이 매워요  
c) 한국 음식이 안 매워요
- Why Eunji did not choose to eat 튀김?  
a) 어제 먹었으니까            b) 매운 음식이니까        c) 살이찌니까
- "Delicious" is \_\_\_\_\_.
- "Noodles" are \_\_\_\_\_.

### 14C. VOCABULARY

먹다	to eat
해물파전	seafood-scallion pancake
고기	meat
그래요?	Is that so?
국수	noodles
-(으)니까/- (으)니	because/since
다른	different
거	thing (colloquial)
-어/아야 겠어요	I should ...
혹시	maybe
튀김	tempura (battered-fried food)
살이 찌서 (살이 찌다)	because (it is) fattening
야채	vegetables
비빔밥	bibimbap (rice bowl)
그게	that thing (colloquial)
음식	food
중	amongst/among
제일	the most/the best

맛있는	<i>delicious</i>
불고기	<i>bulgogi (sweetly marinated Korean BBQ)</i>
맵다/매운	<i>to be spicy (verb, irregular)</i>
-지만	<i>although</i>
어떤	<i>some</i>
멕시코	<i>Mexico</i>
더	<i>more</i>
가장	<i>most, best</i>

#### 14D. KEY PHRASES

The following expressions are useful whether dining out or in.

음식이 아주 맛있어요!	<i>The food is very delicious!</i>
색깔이 참 좋아요!	<i>The color is great!</i>
냄새가 기가 막혀요!	<i>The smell is so wonderful!</i>
국물이 아주 시원해요.	<i>This soup has a very refreshingly good taste.</i>
요리를 아주 잘 하시는데요!	<i>Your cooking skills are excellent!</i>
좀 더 주세요!	<i>Please give me some more!</i>
맛이 좀 짠 것 같아요.	<i>It tastes a little bit salty.</i>
소금 좀 주세요.	<i>Please pass (give) me the salt.</i>
설탕 좀 주세요.	<i>Please pass (give) me the sugar.</i>
후추 좀 주세요.	<i>Please pass (give) me the black pepper.</i>
후식 있어요?	<i>Is there dessert? (lit., Do we have dessert?)</i>
잘 먹었습니다.	<i>The food was great!</i>
배가 너무 불러요, 감사합니다.	<i>I am well stuffed, thank you.</i>
물 좀 주세요.	<i>Some water, please.</i>
찬 물 있어요?	<i>Do you have ice water?</i>

Here are some more general terms for food.

소고기	<i>beef</i>
닭고기	<i>chicken</i>
돼지고기	<i>pork</i>
생선	<i>fish</i>
채식주의자	<i>vegetarian</i>
당근	<i>carrot</i>
시금치	<i>spinach</i>
파	<i>green onion</i>
양파	<i>onion</i>
브로컬리	<i>broccoli</i>
달걀/계란	<i>eggs</i>
밥	<i>cooked rice</i>
빵	<i>bread</i>
물	<i>water</i>
우유	<i>milk</i>
콜라	<i>cola</i>
숟가락	<i>spoon</i>
젓가락	<i>chopsticks</i>
포크	<i>fork</i>
칼/나이프	<i>knife</i>
냅킨	<i>napkin</i>

#### 14E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

##### The Korean Dinner Invitation

In the Korean family culture, only one's closest friends will be invited to a family dinner, even when it is a casual occasion. Therefore, it is quite an honor to be invited to a dinner as a friend of the family. Dining out together is a more common practice than dining at home, especially in Seoul, where there are so many great restaurants, and the food is usually available at a relatively inexpensive price. For a home-cooked family dinner, an invitation is sent out to those who are considered to be most important and meaningful to the family. The host (or, more commonly, the hostess) will cook a grand-scale meal for the guests on special occa-



sions. Homemakers put in a lot of time preparing many different kinds of foods just to amuse the dinner guests. Thus, as an invited guest, it is courteous to compliment the food.

## 14F. GRAMMAR

### Adjectives, Comparatives, and Superlatives

Adjectives in Korean behave very similarly to the way they behave in English: the adjective will appear before a noun in a sentence. Take a look at the following list of adjectives describing Korean food and then at the examples of how they work in sentences.

(고기가) 연한	<i>tender</i>
(고기가) 질긴	<i>stringy</i>
날, 설익은	<i>raw</i>
달콤한	<i>sweet</i>
맛 좋은	<i>delicious, savory</i>
매운	<i>hot, spicy</i>
밋밋한	<i>flat</i>
시큼한	<i>sour</i>
신선하지 않은	<i>stale</i>
신선한	<i>fresh</i>
썩은	<i>rotten</i>
쓴	<i>bitter</i>
양념 맛이 강한	<i>strongly spiced</i>
짭짤한	<i>salty</i>
풍미있는	<i>in a full-taste</i>

Many adjectives in Korean are identified as “modified verbs.”

맵-	<i>to be spicy</i>
불고기가 맵지 않지요?	<i>Bulgogi isn't very spicy, is it?</i>

This verb, 맵-, is modified irregularly. Notice how it is modified in the following example.

맵 (verb form) → 매운	(modified to an adjective)
맵다 → 매워요	<i>it is spicy</i>
춥다 → 추워요	<i>it is cold</i>
덥다 → 더워요	<i>it is hot</i>
쉽다 → 쉬워요	<i>it is easy</i>

With the ending -어/아요, the ㅁ changes the sound from /b/ to /w/.

한국 음식에 매운 음식이 많아요.	<i>There are a lot of spicy Korean foods.</i>
한국 음식은 너무 매워요.	<i>Korean food is too spicy.</i>

### COMPARATIVES

It's very easy to create comparatives in Korean. Simply place 더 in front of the adjective to indicate “more.”

한국 음식이 더 매워요?	<i>Is Korean food spicier?</i>
---------------	--------------------------------

In the same manner, 덜 is used to express “less.”

한국 음식이 덜 매워요?	<i>Is Korean food less spicy?</i>
---------------	-----------------------------------

### SUPERLATIVES

To express superlatives in Korean, use 제일 (the most) or 가장 (the best).

미국에서는 저한테 제일 매운 음식이 멕시코 음식이었어요.	<i>In the States, the spiciest food was Mexican food to me.</i>
한국에서 가장 맛있는 음식은 불고기예요.	<i>The most delicious food in Korea is bulgogi.</i>

### Because/Since: -(으)니 or -(으)니까

-(으)니 or -(으)니까 is added to the end of a Korean phrase to make a causal connection. This expression adds the meaning “because” to the sentence. -(으)니 or -(으)니까 is located at the end of the phrase, not at the end of the sentence. The second part of the sentence using the -(으)니 or -(으)니까 structure usually states the result of the previous causal phrase. Look at the following examples:

CAUSAL EXPRESSION -(으)니 OR -(으)니까	
음식이 맛있으니 좋아요.	<i>Because the food is delicious, it's good./ It's good because the food is delicious.</i>
공부를 많이 하니까 학교가 재미있어요.	<i>Because I study a lot, school is fun./ School is fun because I study a lot.</i>
점심을 많이 먹었으니 저녁은 안 먹을게요.	<i>Because I ate plenty of lunch, I will not eat dinner.</i>
열심히 일을 했으니까 저녁에는 놀겠어요.	<i>Because I worked diligently, I will go out in the evening.</i>

### (I) Should . . . : -어/아야 겠다

-어/아야 겠다 is an expression added to a verb to express that the speaker feels obligated to perform the action or to express what the speaker will be doing in the future. It is equivalent to “should” or “ought to” in English. The alternation between 아 or 어 follows the vowel harmony in Korean. 어 is used and contracted for 하다 verbs.

-어/아야 겠다 = (I) SHOULD	
가야 겠다.	<i>(I) should go.</i>
놀아야 겠다.	<i>(I) should play.</i>
일해야 겠다.	<i>(I) should work.</i>
나는 국수를 만들어야 겠다.	<i>I should make noodles.</i>
너는 야채를 더 먹어야 겠다.	<i>You should eat more vegetables.</i>

You can extend these expressions with other conjunctions such as -고 (and) or -ㄴ/은/는데 (but). Take a look at the following examples of longer applications using this grammar pattern.

### LONGER SENTENCES WITH -어/아야 겠다 = (I) SHOULD

해물파전도 먹고 비빔밥도 먹어야 겠다.	<i>I should eat seafood pancakes and (I should) eat bibimbap too.</i>
집에도 가고 공부도 해야 겠다.	<i>I should go home and (I should) study too.</i>
음식이 이렇게 맛있는데, 왜 가세요?	<i>The food is so delicious; why are you leaving?</i>
불고기가 좋은데, 야채도 많이 먹어야 겠다.	<i>I like bulgogi, but I should also eat a lot of vegetables.</i>

### Although: -지만

-지만 is used as a postposition to mean “although.” This expression is located at the end of the phrase to which it is attached, similar to -(으)니까 (because).

-지만 = ALTHOUGH	
가지만...	<i>Although (I) go ...</i>
먹지만...	<i>Although (I) eat ...</i>
맛있지만...	<i>Although (it is) delicious ...</i>
맵지만...	<i>Although (it is) spicy ...</i>

We can stretch these phrases by adding more content to create complete sentences. See the following examples of longer sentences using the above expressions.

내가 지금은 가지만, 빨리 올게요.	<i>Although (I) go now, I will come soon.</i>
한국 사람들이 불고기를 많이 먹지만, 야채를 먹는 것도 중요하다.	<i>Although Koreans eat bulgogi a lot, eating vegetables is also important.</i>
한국 음식이 맛있지만, 미국 음식도 맛있다.	<i>Although Korean food is delicious, American food is also delicious.</i>
멕시코 음식이 맵지만, 한국 음식은 더 맵다.	<i>Although Mexican food is spicy, Korean food is spicier.</i>

## 14G. READING

The following is a sample menu from a Korean restaurant. Circle the names of the foods that you know and pronounce them out loud.

### 점심 메뉴

불고기 -----	5,000원
탕수육 -----	13,000원
짜장면 -----	4,500원
짬뽕 -----	4,500원
떡볶기 -----	2,500원
김밥 -----	2,000원
잡채 -----	4,000원
튀김 -----	3,000원
우동 -----	3,000원

### Lunch Menu

Bulgogi -----	5,000 won
Tangsuyuk -----	13,000 won
Jjajangmyeon -----	4,500 won
Jjambbong -----	4,500 won
Ddeokbokki -----	2,500 won
Gimbap -----	2,000 won
Japchae -----	4,000 won
Tuigim -----	3,000 won
Udon -----	3,000 won

## 14H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

### Spicy Korean Food

Much of Korean food is based on combinations of seasonings and dried red pepper. Many popular Korean dishes, including the national dish, Kimchi (김치)—a spicy fermented napa cabbage preserve—include dried red pepper or a pepper paste in their list of ingredients. Other spicy ingredients are spicy bean paste, spicy seafood preserve, and spicy vegetable pickles. For a more refined taste, Koreans often add sesame seed oil for a deeper flavor, as well as other ingredients, such as honey, garlic, sesame seeds, soy sauce, and ginger, for a variety of palatal plea-

ures. Still, dried red pepper is the major ingredient in Korean cuisine. This is distinctive from Western cooking methods, where salt and pepper or butter are commonly used in cooking. Koreans do not use butter; rather, they use vegetable oils and salt. The dried red pepper is known to have been brought to Korea from Japan and China in medieval times, but the actual route remains unclear. The popularity of Korean food has recently begun to spread in the United States, primarily in major cities such as New York City, L.A., and San Francisco. It is typical for a Korean meal to be prepared with at least three to five side dishes and the chef's choice of the day, separate from the main course. Some common side dishes include sweet fish cakes, cucumber salad, sweet and sour seaweed, or various stir-fried vegetables. Sticky rice and soup are often seen accompanying a Korean meal as well.

## EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

어야 겠어요    좋겠네요    고 싶어요    어때요  
살이 찌서

- A: 오늘은 뭐 먹 \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B: 어제는 해물파전을 먹었으니 오늘은 고기를 먹겠어요.  
A: 저는 좀 다른 거를 먹 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ .  
B: 튀김은 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A: 튀김은 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 안 돼요. 야채를 좀 먹어야겠어요.  
B: 그럼 비빔밥은 어때요?  
A: 아, 그게 \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ !

B. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate particle.

- 어제는 비빔밥( ) 먹었어요.
- 뭐( ) 좋을까요?
- 불고기( ) 맵지 않지요?
- 어떤 한국 사람들( ) 매운 음식은 잘 못 먹어요.
- 그런데 이제는 저( ) 매운 음식이 더 맛있어요!

C. Complete the sentences with the given verbs. Use verb + -어/아야 겠다.

먹다 → 먹어야 겠다.

- 가다 → \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 오다 → \_\_\_\_\_ .

3. 좋다 → \_\_\_\_\_.
4. 공부하다 → \_\_\_\_\_.
5. 말씀드리다 → \_\_\_\_\_.

D. Translate the given sentences into Korean.

1. What would be good?
2. Then, how about this vegetable rice bowl?
3. Although I like spicy food, Korean food is really spicy!
4. The spiciest food in the U.S. was Mexican food.
5. Maybe, seafood-pancake for you?

## ANSWER KEY

### Comprehension Practice

1. c) 비빔밥                      2. b) 한국 음식이 매워요
3. c) 살이찌니까                4. "Delicious" is "맛있는."
5. "Noodles" are "국수."

### Exercises

- A. 1. 고 싶어요 2. 어야 겠어요 3. 어때요 4. 살이 찌서  
5. 좋겠네요
- B. 1. 을 2. 가 3. 가 4. 은 5. 도
- C. 1. 가야겠다. 2. 와야 겠다. 3. 좋아야 겠다. 4. 공부해야겠다.  
5. 말씀드리려야 겠다.
- D. 1. 뭐가 좋을까요?  
2. 그럼 이 야채 비빔밥은 어때요?  
3. 매운 음식을 좋아하지만, 한국 음식은 너무 매워요!  
4. 미국에서 제일 매운 음식은 멕시코 음식이었어요.  
5. 혹시 해물 파전은 어때요?

## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

We're sure you've built up quite the appetite from this lesson. To reward yourself, go to your local Korean restaurant to try a couple of dishes. Or, use the following recipe to create your own Korean meal.

### Bibimbap

#### Ingredients

- (1 serving)  
 1 cup cooked rice  
 1 oz (30 g) beef  
 1 oz (30 g) each radish, carrot, spinach, soybean sprouts, fiddlehead,  
 cooked and seasoned with vegetable oil and salt  
 1 egg  
 Vegetable oil

#### Marinade

- 1/2 T soy sauce  
 2/3 t sesame oil  
 1/4 t sugar  
 1/4 t cooking wine

#### Instructions

1. Cut beef into strips and marinate 5 minutes in marinade. In hot oil, cook beef strips briefly; set aside. Place hot cooked rice in serving bowl.
2. Arrange 4 kinds of seasoned vegetable on rice. Place beef in the center.
3. Heat vegetable oil in a skillet to fry the egg, sunny-side up.
4. Place the fried egg on top of the beef. Serve with Kochujang (sweet and hot bean-paste sauce) and sesame oil in a sauce dish. Mix everything when eating.

You can find more recipes at the following website:

<http://asiarecipe.com/korea.html>.

Try to cook one of these Korean dishes with your family for dinner, and write down how you and your family appreciate the taste of Korean cuisine, using the adjectives you learned in this lesson!

## LESSON

# 15

저도 “붉은 악마”예요!

I'm a Red Devils Fan Too!

In this lesson, you will learn how to talk about the various sports that Koreans enjoy. You will also learn the confirming expression -지요, another causal expression, -아/어서, and reported speech using -대요. Let's get started with some new vocabulary!

### 15A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

축구 경기	soccer match
붉은 악마	Red Devils (Korean national soccer team nickname)
인기가 없대요.	I heard that it is not popular.
크리스가 그러는데...	Chris said that ...
무슨 운동을 좋아한대요?	What kind of sports do they like? (lit., did you hear what sports they like?)
미식 축구	American football
농구	basketball

### 15B. DIALOGUE

Minho and Eunji are on their way to the soccer stadium. They are heading there to watch a national soccer match between Korea and China.

민호: 은지씨, 지난 번 축구 경기 너무 재미있었지요?

은지: 네, 저는 “붉은 악마” 셔츠를 입고 경기를 봤어요.

민호: 2002년 월드컵 이후로 축구 팬들이 많이 늘었어요.

은지: 한국 사람들은 축구를 통해서 더 단결을

하는 것 같아요.

민호: 그런데, 미국에서는 축구가 인기가 없대요.

은지: 맞아요. 크리스가 그러는데, 축구는 미국에서 정말 인기가 없대요.

민호: 그럼 미국 사람들은 무슨 운동을 좋아한대요?

은지: 미식 축구, 야구, 농구, 하키 등을 더 좋아한대요. 한국 사람들은 축구를 가장 좋아해요!

민호: 그렇구나... 어, 저기 축구장 입구가 보이네요. 사람들이 아주 많은데요?

은지: 오늘도 재미있겠어요!

민호: 우리 음료수 좀 살까요?

은지: 물론이죠!

**Minho:** *Eunji, wasn't it fun, the last soccer match?*

**Eunji:** *Yes, I watched the match with my "Red Devils" shirt on.*

**Minho:** *There were a lot more soccer fans after the 2002 World Cup.*

**Eunji:** *Koreans seem to be united more through the soccer match.*

**Minho:** *By the way, I heard that soccer is not popular in the U.S.*

**Eunji:** *Right, I heard from Chris that soccer is really not popular in the U.S.*

**Minho:** *Then what games do Americans like (did you hear)?*

**Eunji:** *They like American football, baseball, basketball, hockey, etc. Koreans like soccer the best!*

**Minho:** *I see... Oh, I can see the entrance of the field there. There are many people, aren't there?*

**Eunji:** *It's going to be fun today (also)!*

**Minho:** *Shall we buy some drinks?*

**Eunji:** *Of course!*

## Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

- Where are they going?  
a) 붉은 악마                      b) 축구장                      c) 시장
- Which sports are not popular with Americans, according to Eunji and Minho?  
a) 야구                              b) 농구                              c) 축구
- What does Eunji say is the effect of the soccer match on Koreans?  
a) 인기                              b) 단결                              c) 재미
- "축구" is \_\_\_\_\_.
- "야구" is \_\_\_\_\_.

## 15C. VOCABULARY

축구	soccer
경기	game, match
-지요?	... isn't it? ... doesn't it? (tag question)
붉은 악마	Red Devils
셔츠	shirt
입다	to wear
월드컵	World Cup
이후로	after
팬	fan
늘리다	to be expanded, to grow
통해서	through
단결	unity
단결하다	to be united
인기	popularity
인기가 있다	to be popular
-대요	I heard that ... (reported speech)
맞아요	Right. (agreement)
그러는데	I heard (someone) said ...
미식 축구	American football



야구	<i>baseball</i>
농구	<i>basketball</i>
하키	<i>hockey</i>
그렇구나.	<i>I see. (realization)</i>
축구장	<i>soccer field</i>
입구	<i>entrance</i>
음료수	<i>drinks</i>
물론이죠!	<i>Of course!</i>

### 15D. KEY PHRASES

Here are some terms used frequently by Koreans when talking about sports.

축구	<i>soccer</i>
프로 축구	<i>professional soccer</i>
야구	<i>baseball</i>
농구	<i>basketball</i>
배구	<i>volleyball</i>
하키	<i>hockey</i>
수영	<i>swimming</i>
스키	<i>skiing</i>
테니스	<i>tennis</i>
경기에서 지다	<i>to lose the game</i>
경기에서 이기다	<i>to win the game</i>
경기에서 대패하다	<i>to be completely defeated</i>
우승하다	<i>to win the championship</i>
싸우다	<i>to fight, to compete</i>

Because colors are important in distinguishing different sports teams, let's learn some basic colors as well.

붉은/빨간	<i>red</i>
하얀/흰	<i>white</i>
검은/까만	<i>black</i>
노란	<i>yellow</i>
파란/푸른	<i>green or blue</i>
주황	<i>orange</i>

보라	<i>purple</i>
갈색	<i>brown</i>
핑크	<i>pink</i>
옥색	<i>jade</i>

### 15E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Sports are extremely popular in Korea. While soccer (축구) is certainly the most popular sport, especially after Korea and Japan hosted the 2002 World Cup Championships, Koreans enjoy other pastimes as well. The national martial art is 태권도 (Tae Kwon Do), which is still a popular sport exercised throughout the nation and overseas. Nowadays Koreans also enjoy baseball and basketball, and have professional leagues for both sports. Some Korean players are recruited by the MLB or the NBA in the United States.

If you ever have the chance to attend a sporting match in Korea, you can keep these two chants in mind: 대-한-민국! (lit., Great-Korean-nation!) and 이겨라! (Victory!). You'll probably hear them a lot, as Koreans are huge sports fans and big supporters of their national teams.

### 15F. GRAMMAR

#### Tag Question: Confirming -지요

The ending -지요 functions the same as a tag question in English ("... doesn't it?" "... aren't they?" or "... don't you?" etc.). These tag questions are used when you'd like to confirm some facts, events, or situations that you are describing or discussing. -지요 functions the same way and creates more friendly environment, showing the person's willingness to cooperate and participate in the conversation. This ending can be combined with different tenses.

TAG QUESTION = VERB + -지요?

학교에 가지요?	<i>You go to school, don't you?</i>
학교에 갔지요?	<i>You went to school, didn't you?</i>
학교에 가고 있지요?	<i>You are going to school, aren't you?</i>
학교에 갈 거지요?	<i>You will go to school, won't you?</i>

The tense indicators precede the -지요 ending, and no other grammatical ending is needed. The non-polite expression is formed by removing the polite ending particle -요.

NON-POLITE ENDING -지	
점심 먹었지?	<i>You ate lunch, didn't you?</i>
점심 먹지?	<i>You are eating lunch, aren't you?</i>
점심 먹을거지?	<i>You will eat lunch, won't you?</i>

The -지 or -지요 ending is a very useful and commonly used expression engaging and inviting the listener to take part in the conversation.

### For/Because: Causal Expression -아/어서

-아/어서 is another causal expression similar to the one we saw in Lesson 14, -(으)니까. There is not much difference between these two expressions, only that the form -어/아서 is similar to the English "for" and is shorter and simpler, as opposed to the stronger causal expression -(으)니까. Remember the order of causal phrases: the "because" phrase precedes the "result" phrase.

-아/어서 = CAUSAL EXPRESSION "FOR.../BECAUSE..."	
크리스는 바쁘다. 크리스는 못 왔다.	<i>Chris was busy. He couldn't come.</i>
크리스는 바빠서 못왔어요.	<i>Chris couldn't come because he was busy.</i>
아파요. 못 가요.	<i>I am sick. I cannot go.</i>
아파서 못 가요.	<i>Because I am sick, I cannot go.</i>
불고기가 맛있었어요. 불고기를 더 먹었어요.	<i>The bulgogi was delicious. I ate more bulgogi.</i>
불고기가 맛있어서 더 먹었어요.	<i>Because the bulgogi was delicious, I ate more.</i>
축구가 재미있어요. 또 왔어요.	<i>The soccer game is fun. I came here again.</i>
축구가 재미있어서 또 왔어요.	<i>Because the soccer game is fun, I came here again.</i>

Remember the form -(으)니까? The following examples show how two phrases are combined to form a causal expression using -(으)니까.

CAUSAL ENDING -(으)니까	
크리스는 바빴다. 크리스는 못 왔다.	<i>Chris was busy. He couldn't come.</i>
크리스는 바쁘니까 못 왔어요.	<i>Chris couldn't come because he was busy.</i>
저는 한국 음식이 좋아요. 저는 한국 음식을 자주 요리해요.	<i>I like Korean food. I cook Korean food often.</i>
저는 한국 음식이 좋으니까 자주 요리해요.	<i>Because I like Korean foods, I cook them often.</i>

### Reported Speech -대요/-ㄴ 대요

-대요/-ㄴ 대요 is attached to the end of a sentence to express the concept "I heard that..." This is called "reported speech" because you are reporting news or someone else's words to the listener.

-대요 = I HEARD THAT...	
민지가 축구장에 갔대요.	<i>I heard that Minji went to the soccer field.</i>
크리스가 회사에 늦었대요.	<i>I heard that Chris was late to work.</i>
한국에서는 축구가 제일 인기가 많대요.	<i>I heard that the soccer is the most popular sport in Korea.</i>
한국 음식 중에서 불고기가 맛이 있대요.	<i>I heard that among Korean foods, bulgogi is delicious.</i>

### To Like: 좋아하다

The verb 좋아하다 is used in Korean to express "to like." It is used and conjugated like any other verb in Korean. Take a look at the following examples.

미국에서는 무슨 운동을 좋아하는대요?	<i>What sports do Americans like (do you hear)?</i>
저는 야구를 안 좋아해요.	<i>I don't like baseball.</i>
그는 축구를 좋아해요.	<i>He likes soccer.</i>

## 15G. READING

The following is a mock newspaper article about a World Cup soccer match. Circle the expressions that you recognize.

한국인들의 월드컵 축구에 관한 열정은 뜨겁습니다. 지난 27일 서울 시청 공원 앞에 2만 명의 축구팬이 모였습니다. 이 날 한국인들은 독일과 한국 전에 단결된 응원력을 보여주었습니다. 이 응원을 통해 한국인들은 전 세계에 뜨거운 한국 축구 사랑의 의지를 보여 주었습니다. 한국인들은 원래 단결을 잘 하는 민족입니다. 한국인처럼 전 국민이 실제로 하나로 단결이 된 모습을 세계에 보여 준 경우는 드뭅니다.

*The Korean passion for World Cup soccer is heated. On the past 27th, twenty thousands of soccer fans got together in front of the Si Cheong Park. On this day, Koreans showed their united power in cheering for the Germany vs. Korea match. Through this cheer session, Koreans showed their will to love Korean soccer. Koreans by nature are easily united. It is rare to find a case where all citizens of a nation actually got united as the Koreans did.*

### NEW VOCABULARY

열정	passion/enthusiasm
뜨겁습니다	is heated
2만	twenty thousand
모였습니다	got together
단결된	united
응원력	power of cheering
보여주었습니다	shown
응원	cheer
통해	through
뜨거운	hot
사랑	love
의지	will, volition
원래	originally
민족	ethnicity
처럼	as
국민	citizens of the nation
실제로	actually

모습	looks
경우	case
드뭅니다	rare

## 15H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Soccer is traditionally the favorite sport of Koreans. The Korean soccer craze heated up in particular when the 2002 World Cup took place in Korea and Japan. The one thing that would've struck any visitor to Korea at the time was the ubiquitousness of the color red. Red signifies Korean ethnicity, along with blue, as you can see in the red and blue combination yin-yang sign on the Korean flag. Korean soccer fans wore red shirts with the logo 붉은 악마 ("Red Devils," the nickname of the Korean national team) to all the matches, so at one point the Korean section of the crowd in the stadium was completely red. "Be the Reds!" T-shirts were selling at a street price of USD \$6.50 throughout the whole series. Nearly everyone you encountered on the street in Korea at the time was wearing red. This craze spread from the service desk employees at the Asiana Airlines check-in to businesspeople parading around with their families in sport-utility vehicles. Even Buddhist nuns and grandparents on the sidewalks were wearing these shirts to show their support for Korea in the World Cup. The second most popular sport in Korea is probably baseball. Many Koreans go to pro-baseball season games to spend their weekend leisure time with friends and family. As more professional Korean golfers have gained a name in the worldwide pro-golf championships, there is a growing golf craze in Korea as well.

### EXERCISES

A. Choose the best word from the list to complete the dialogue below.

늘었어요    월드컵    미식 축구    인기    그렇구나

- A: 저는 붉은 악마 셔츠가 두 개 있어요!  
 B: 와, 한국에서는 2002년 \_\_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 이후로 축구 팬이 많이 늘었지요?  
 A: 많이 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_. 그 때 정말 재미있었어요.  
 B: 그런데 미국에서는 축구가 인기가 없지요?  
 A: 네, 미국 사람들은 축구를 안 보고 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 를 보지요.  
 B: 미식 축구가 미국에서 가장 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 가 있어요?  
 A: 네. 그리고 야구나 농구도 인기가 아주 많아요.  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_.



## INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

For your last journal entry for this course, write about your favorite sports, incorporating the contents of this lesson. Describe (1) why you like the sports and (2) the experience of going to an actual game or match. Write on these two topics in three sentences each, and then write about your opinion on American pastime sporting events. Report some major sporting events that took place this year as well to finish your essay. Use the grammar patterns that you learned in this lesson—such as “-대요,” “-어/아서,” and “-지요”— as well as other forms that you learned from previous lessons. You can keep up these journal entries even once you’ve finished the course; the more practice you give your Korean, the more likely you are to become fluent!

# Glossary

## English-Korean

1 o'clock	한 시	again	다시
10 o'clock	열 시	age	-살 ( <i>counter</i> )
11 o'clock	열 한 시	airline	항공
12 o'clock	열 두 시	airplane	비행기
2 o'clock	두 시	airport waiting room	공항 대기실
3 o'clock	세 시	also	-도 ( <i>post.</i> )
4 o'clock	네 시	although	-지만
5 o'clock	다섯 시	among	-중
6 o'clock	여섯 시	and	-하고 ( <i>between nouns</i> )
7 o'clock	일곱 시	animal	짐승, -마리 ( <i>counter</i> )
8 o'clock	여덟 시	any	아무 ( <i>used in negative expression</i> )
9 o'clock	아홉 시		
<b>A</b>			
a bit, a little	좀	April	사월
a lot of	많아요 ( 많- )	archaeology	고고학
a.m.	오전	arm	팔
about	-쯤 ( <i>amount</i> )	arrive	도착하다 (도착하-) ( <i>v.</i> )
absolute rest	절대 안정	ask	물어보다 ( <i>v.</i> ), 말씀드리다 (말씀드리-) ( <i>v.</i> )
account	통장	attend	다니다 (다니-) ( <i>v.</i> )
actually	실은	August	팔월
address	주소		
after	이후로		
afternoon	오후		



## B

back	허리	blue eyes, have	파란 눈이에요 (v.)
bad, become	나빠지다 (v.)	blue pants	청바지
bad-looking, be	못 생겼어요 (v.)	boarding time	탑승시간
balcony	발코니	boat	배
bank	은행	Bon voyage!	즐거운 여행되세요!
baseball	야구	bookshelf	책장
basketball	농구	bread	빵
bathtub	욕조	breakfast	아침
bathroom	화장실	bring and take	가지고 가다 (가지고 가-) (v.)
be	-있다 (있-) (v.), -이다(v.)	broccoli	브로컬리
be able to	-르 수 있-	brown	갈색
be how	어떻다 (v.)	brown-haired	갈색 머리
because	-(으)니까	building	건물, -동 (noun counter)
become	되-	bulgogi	불고기 (Korean BBQ)
bed	침대	bureau	화장대
bedroom	침실, 방	bus	버스
beef	소고기	bus station	버스 역
best	가장, 제일	bus stop	버스 정류장
bibimbap (rice bowl)	비빔밥	bus terminal	버스 터미널
big thing	큰 것 (크-)	busy, be	바쁘다 (바쁘-) (v.)
biology	생물학	but	그런데 (change in topic)
birthday	생일 (n. for younger people), 생신 (n. for hon. person)	by means of	로
bitter	쓴	by the way	그런데
black	검은, 까만	<b>C</b>	
black-colored eyes, have	검은 눈이에요 (v.)	came	왔어 (오-) (non-polite)
blue	푸른, 파란 (occasionally)	car	(자동)차

carrot	당근	consult	상담하다 (상담하-) (v.)
chair	의자	cook	요리해요, 요리하다 (요리하-) (v.)
charge of, be in	담당 (v.)	cousin	사촌 (father's side), 외사촌 (mother's side)
checking account	예금 통장	cousins	사촌들
chemistry	화학	cruise	유람 (선)
chest	가슴	cup	컵, -잔 (counter)
chicken	닭고기	currently	현재
chief clerk	계장님	customs	세관
children	아이들	<b>D</b>	
chopsticks	젓가락	dance class	댄스 수업
chubby	똥똥해요 (v.)	date	데이트
citizen's registration card	주민 등록증	day	일, 하루, 낮
city	시내	December	십이월
city hall station	시청역	defeated, be completely	(경기에서) 대패하다 (v.)
classmate	동창	delicious	맛있는, 맛 좋은
clean	청소하다 (청하-) (v.)	delicious, although (it is)	맛있지만
clothes	옷, -벌 (counter)	delivery	배달
clothing store	옷가게	depart	출발하다 (출발하-) (v.)
coffee shop	커피숍	department head	부장님
cola	콜라	deposit	입금
color	색깔	deposit slip	입금표
come	오다 (오-) (v.), 와요 (오-)	desk	책상
come this way	이리 오세요	dessert	후식
company	회사	diagnosis	진료
compete	싸우다 (싸우-) (v.)	different	다른
computer engineering	컴퓨터 공학		



difficult, be	어렵다 (어렵-) (v.)	ear	귀
difficult, become	어려워지다 (v.)	early	일찍
diligently	열심히	eat	먹다 (먹-) (v.), 먹어-, 밥 먹어요 (meals)
dinner	저녁	eggs	계란, 달걀
dining table	식탁	eight	여덟 (K-K number), 팔 (S-K number)
dish	그릇, -그릇 (counter)	eight thirty	여덟시 반
do	하다 (하-) (v.)	electronics engineering	전자공학
Do you speak English?	영어를 하세요?	eleven	열하나 (K-K number), 십일 (S-K number)
Do you speak Korean?	한국어 하세요?	English	영어
do/does	해요 (하-)	English literature	영문학
doctor	의사 선생님	enlarge	넓히다 (넓히-) (v.)
document	서류	enter	들어오다 (들어오-) (v.)
doesn't it	-지요? (tag question)	entrance	입구
doing	하세요 (하-)	envious, be	부럽다 (부럽-) (v.)
don't	-지 마세요 (negative command marker)	evening	저녁
downtown	시내	every-	-마다
drink	마시다 (마시-) (v.)	exchange	교환
drinks	음료수	exercise	운동하다 (운동하-) (v.), 운동 (n.)
driver's license	운전 면허증	exist	있다 (있-) (v.)
during	-간	expanded, be	늘다 (늘-) (v.)
during weekdays	주중에	expensive, become	비싸지다 (비싸지-) (v.)
<b>E</b>		eye	눈
each	-번씩 (used with a number)		

<b>F</b>		forget	깜빡하다 (깜빡하-) (v.)
face	얼굴	fork	포크
fan	팬	forty	마흔 (K-K number), 사십 (S-K number)
father	아버지	four	넷 (K-K number), 사 (S-K number)
father's sister	고모	fourteen	열넷 (K-K number), 십사 (S-K number)
father's sister's husband	고모부	French literature	불문학
fax	팩스	fresh	신선한
February	이월	Friday	금요일
ferry	여객선	from	-부터, 에서요
fever	열	from where	어디에서
fifty	쉰 (K-K number), 오십 (S-K number)	front gate	정문
fight	싸우다 (싸우-) (v.)	funny, become	재미있어지다 (재미있어지-) (v.)
first of all	우선	furniture	가구
first time	처음	<b>G</b>	
fish	생선	game	경기
fit	어울리다 (v.)	garment	옷, -벌 (counter)
fit well	잘 어울려요 (어울리-) (v.)	generate	나다 (나-) (v.)
five	다섯 (K-K number), 오 (S-K number)	get better	좋아지다 (좋아지-) (v.)
fix	고치다 (v.)	get on	타다 (타-) (v.)
flat	밋밋한	get rid of	없애다 (없애-) (v.)
flight	비행기	get up	일어나요
flower shop	꽃가게	gift	선물
follow	따라오다 (따라오-) (v.)	give	주다 (주-) (v.), 드리다 (to someone else) (v.)
food	음식		
food poisoning	식중독		
foot	발		
football	미식 축구		

glass	-잔 (counter)	<b>H</b>	
go	가다 (가-) (v.), 자다 (자-) (v.)	hand	손
go grocery shopping	시장ব্যয়	have	있다 (있-) (v.)
go home	집에 가요	have to (do something)	-아야 돼요 (v.)
go to the bank	은행에 가요	he	그 (non-polite), 그분 (polite)
go to class	수업에 가요	head	머리
go well (clothes)	어울려요	headache	두통
good	좋-, 좋은	hear	들었어요 (듣-) (v.), 듣다 (듣-) (v.)
good, be	좋다 (좋-) (v.)	heart	심장
good, become	좋아지다 (좋아지-) (v.)	hello	여보세요
good-bye	안녕히 가십시오! (fml./polite), 조심해서 가세요! (infml./polite), 잘 가! (non polite), 안녕히 가세요! (infml./polite)	her	그(녀)의, 그 분의 (polite/hon.)
good-looking	잘 생겼어요 (compliment about a man)	here	여기
gradually	살살	here, be	여기예요 (v.)
graduate school life	대학원 생활	hi	안녕 (infml./non polite)
grandfather	할아버지, 외할아버지 (mother's side)	his	그의, 그 분의 (polite/hon.)
grandmother	할머니, 외할머니 (mother's side)	history	역사학
green	파란, 푸른 (occasionally)	hockey	하키
green onion	파	homework	숙제
		hospital	병원
		hot	매운 (spicy)
		hotel	호텔
		house	집, -채 (counter)
		How are you?	안녕하십니까? (fml./polite), 안녕하세요? (infml./polite)
		How is/are...? 어때요?	
		how much	얼마나

however	그런데	<b>K</b>	
<b>I</b>		kitchen	부엌
I	나 (non-polite), 저 (polite)	knife	칼, 나이프
I don't mind	괜찮아요	know	알겠습니다 (fml./ polite), 알았어요 (infml./polite), (알-) (v.)
in a full-taste	풍미있는	Korean	한국어
in fact	실은	Korean literature	국문학
information desk	안내소	<b>L</b>	
information science	정보과학	laboratory	연구실
intend to fix	고쳐 보다 (고치-) (v.)	large build, have	덩치가 커요 (v.)
interesting, be	재미있다 (재미있-) (v.)	large, become	넓어지다 (넓어지-) (v.)
invite	초대하다 (초대하-) (v.)	last	마지막, 지난
island	-도	last night	어제 밤
isn't it?	-지요? (tag question)	late, be	늦다 (늦-) (v.)
it seems...	같은데요 (같-)	lately	요즘
It's all right.	괜찮아요.	learn	배우다 (배우-) (v.)
It's nothing.	별 거 아니예요.	learned	배웠어요
It's okay.	괜찮아. (non-pol.)	leave	떠나다 (떠나-) (v.)
<b>J</b>		left	왼쪽
jade	옥색	leg	다리
January	일월	let it (them) be	그냥 두다 (v.)
jeans	청바지	library	도서관
jog	조깅하다 (조깅하-) (v.)	lifestyle	생활
July	칠월	listen	듣다 (듣-) (v.)
June	유월	living room	거실
		long hair, have	머리가 길어요 (v.)
		look	보다 (보-) (v.)

look good	좋아 보다 (좋아 보-) (v.)	more	더
lose the game	경기에서 지다 (경기에서 지-) (v.)	morning	아침
lower stomach	아랫배	most	가장, 제일
lunch	점심	mother	어머니
lunchtime	점심	mother's sister	이모
		mother's sister's husband	이모부
<b>M</b>		movie theater	영화 관
major	전공	Mr.	-씨, 선생님
make a phone call	전화를 걸어 (걸-) ( <i>non-polite</i> )	Mrs.	-씨, 사모님
make deliveries	배달을 해요	Ms.	-씨
March	삼월	music	음악
market	시장	my	나의 ( <i>non-polite</i> ), 내 ( <i>non-polite</i> ), 저의 ( <i>polite</i> ), 제 ( <i>polite</i> )
match	경기	<b>N</b>	
maternal side relatives	외- ( <i>affix</i> )	name	성함
mathematics	수학	napkin	냅킨
May	오월	need	필요 하 (필요하-) (v.)
maybe	혹시	new recruit	신입사원
meat	고기	newsstand	가판대
medical insurance card	의료 보험증	next	옆
medical studies	의학	nice	좋-
medicine	약	night	밤
medium build	보통 체격이에요	nine	아홉 ( <i>K-K number</i> ), 구 ( <i>S-K number</i> )
meet	뵙다 (뵙-) (v.)	non-polite ending, giving a background	-이지
meet a friend	친구를 만나요	non-polite familiar ending	아, 어
Mexico	멕시코		
milk	우유		
Monday	월요일		
month	월, -달 ( <i>duration of</i> )		

non-smoking area	금연 구역	orange	오렌지색
noodles	국수	our	저희(들)(의) ( <i>non-polite</i> ), 우리(들)의 ( <i>polite</i> )
not	안	over there	저기
not at all	아니요, 천만에요	<b>P</b>	
November	십일월	pair	한 벌 ( <i>noun counter for clothes</i> )
<b>O</b>		pants	바지
October	시월	passport	여권
of course	물론이-, 물론이죠!	past	지난
office	사무실	paternal side relatives	친- ( <i>affix</i> )
Oh, well...	글쎄요	pencils	연필, -자루 ( <i>counter</i> )
Okay.	좋아요.	people	사람들, -사람/-명 ( <i>counter</i> ), -분 ( <i>counter, hon.</i> )
older aunt	큰어머니 ( <i>father's older brother's wife</i> )	person	사람, -사람/-명 ( <i>counter</i> ), -분 ( <i>counter, hon.</i> )
older brother	오빠 ( <i>f. speaker</i> ), 형 ( <i>m. speaker</i> ), 오형 ( <i>m. speaker</i> )	petite, be	왜소해요 (v.)
older brother's wife	올케 언니	phone number	전화번호
older sister	언니 ( <i>f. speaker</i> ), 누나 ( <i>m. speaker</i> )	pink	핑크
older uncle (father's older brother)	큰아버지	plan	계획
on the right	오른쪽에	plane ticket	비행기표
one	하나 ( <i>K-K number</i> ), 일 ( <i>S-K number</i> )	play	놀다 (놀-) (v.)
one hundred	백	polite familiar ending	-아요, -어요
one thousand	천	polite formal ending	-습니다
one-way ticket	편도표	polite formal question ending	-습니까
onion	양파		

polite negative command	-지 마세요
polite positive command	-세요
polite short form ending	-요
popular, be	인기가 있- (v.)
popularity	인기
pork	돼지고기
positive	좋-
possible, be	가능하다 (가능하-) (v.)
possible, become	가능해지다 (v.)
preparation	준비
pretty	예뻐요 (compliment about a woman)
pretty, be	예쁜 (예쁘-) (v.)
price	가격, 값
program	프로그램
programmer	프로그래머
purple	보라색
<b>R</b>	
raw	날, 설익은
realize	그렇다 (그렇-)
really	정말
receive it	받아라 (받-) (non-polite)
red	붉은색, 빨간
refrigerator	냉장고
relatives	친척들
remodel	리모델링하다 (리모델링하-) (v.)

remodeling	리모델링
rental car	렌트카
replacement	교체
reservation	예약
reserve	예약하다 (예약하-) (v.)
rice (cooked)	밥
ride	타다 (타-) (v.)
right	맞아요 (agreement), 오른쪽 (side), 오른쪽으로 (to the)
right away	바로
room	방
rotten	썩은
round trip	왕복
round-trip ticket	왕복표

**S**

sale	세일
salty	짭짤한
same, be	같다 (v.)
sashimi	회
Saturday	토요일
savings account	저금 통장
savory	맛 좋은
saying	말씀
school	학교
science	과학, 학과
seafood-scallion pancake	해물파전
section chief	과장님

see	알겠습니다 (알-) (v.); 뵙다 (뵙-) (v.), 그렇다 (그렇-) (v.)
See you again!	또 뵈요!
See you later!	다음에 뵈요!
send	보내다 (보내-) (v.)
sent	보낸
September	구월
seven	일곱 (K-K number), 칠 (S-K number)
severe headache	심한 두통
she	그(녀), 그분 (polite/hon.)
shirt	셔츠
shoe closet	신발장
short	키가 작아요 (person's height)
short hair, have	머리가 짧아요 (v.)
should (do something)	-아야 겠어요 (v.)
shower	샤워해요
sick, be (v.)	아프다 (아프-)
sick, become	아파지다 (v.)
since	-(으)니
sing	노래하다 (노래하-) (v.)
sister-in-law	올케 (f. speaker, of brother's wife), 식누이 (f. speaker, of husband's sister)
sit	앉다 (앉-) (v.)

six	여섯 (K-K number), 육 (S-K number)
sixty	예순 (K-K number), 육십 (S-K number)
skiing	스키
skinny	말랐어요
sleep	잠자요
slightly	살살
slowly	살살
small bedroom	작은 방
small size	작은 사이즈
smaller, become	작아지다 (작아지-) (v.)
soccer	축구, 프로 축구 (professional)
soccer field	축구장
soccer match	축구 경기
sociology	사회학
sofa	소파
some	어떤
soon	바로
sour	시큼한
speak	말하다 (말하-) (v.)
speak English	영어하다 (영어하-) (v.)
spend time	지내다 (지내-) (v.)
spicy	매운
spicy, be	맵- (v.)
spinach	시금치
spoon	숟가락

spouses	부부, 내외분 ( <i>polite/hon.</i> )	teeth	이
spring	봄	tell	말씀드리다 (말씀드리-) (v.)
stale	신선하지 않은	teller	은행원
started	시작했어요	tempura	튀김
stereo (audio) set	스테레오 (오디오) 장치	ten	열 ( <i>K-K number</i> ), 십 ( <i>S-K number</i> )
stomach	배	tender	(고기가) 연한
stomachache, have a	체하다 (체하-) (v.)	tennis	테니스
storage	창고	thank you	감사해요 ( <i>infml./ polite</i> ), 고마워요 ( <i>infml./polite</i> ), 고마워 ( <i>infml./ non-polite</i> ), 감사합니다 ( <i>fml./polite</i> ), 고맙습니다 (고맙-) ( <i>fml./polite</i> ), 땡큐! ( <i>colloquial</i> ; from English)
strange, be	이상하다 (이상하-) (v.)	that	그, 그것, 그거
strange, become	이상해지다 (v.)	that over there	저것
stringy	(고기가) 질긴	that thing	그거, 그계 ( <i>colloquial</i> )
strongly-spiced	양념 맛이 강한	that thing over there	저거
study	공부 (n.), 공부하다 (v.)	their	그(녀)들의, 그 분들의 ( <i>polite/hon.</i> )
subject particle	-이, 가	themselves	자기자신들 ( <i>non-polite</i> ), 그분자신들 ( <i>polite/hon.</i> )
subway	지하철	then	그럼
suddenly	갑자기	there	거기, 저기
suitcase	여행 가방	therefore	그래서
summer	여름	there is/ there are	있어요
Sunday	일요일		
sweet	달콤한		
swimming	수영		
<b>T</b>			
take and bring	가지고 가다 (가지고 가-) (v.)		
tall	키가 커요 ( <i>person's height</i> )		
tall person	키가 큰 분		
team leader	팀장		

these days	요즘	train station	기차역
they	그들 ( <i>non-polite</i> ), 그분들 ( <i>polite/hon.</i> )	tree	나무, -그루 ( <i>counter</i> )
thing	것 ( <i>colloquial</i> )	trip	여행
thirteen	열셋 ( <i>K-K number</i> ), 십삼 ( <i>S-K number</i> )	trouble	말썽이다 (말썽이-) (v.)
thirty	서른 ( <i>K-K number</i> ), 삼십 ( <i>S-K number</i> )	troublesome	말썽이에요
this	이, 이것, 이거	try	-아 보- (v.), (doing something) -어 보- (v.)
this kind	이런 (종류)	try eating	먹어 보다
this thing	이것, 이거	try going	가 보다
thought	생각	try receiving	받아 보다
three	셋 ( <i>K-K number</i> ), 삼 ( <i>S-K number</i> )	try reserving	예약해 보다
through	통해서	Tuesday	화요일
Thursday	목요일	turn	돌다 (돌-) (v.)
thus	그래서	twelve	열둘 ( <i>K-K number</i> ), 십이 ( <i>S-K number</i> )
ticket	표, 승차권	twenty	스물 ( <i>K-K number</i> ), 이십 ( <i>S-K number</i> )
ticket issuing desk	발권대	two	둘 ( <i>K-K number</i> ), 이 ( <i>S-K number</i> )
to	-까지	<b>U</b>	
to someone	-에게 ( <i>literate form</i> ), -께 ( <i>polite/ hon. form</i> ), -한테 ( <i>spoken form</i> )	U.S.	미국
today	오늘	uncle's wife	숙모 ( <i>father's side</i> ), 외숙모 ( <i>mother's side</i> )
together	같이	united, be	단결하다 (단결하-) (v.)
tomorrow	내일	unity	단결
too much	너무 많은	unmarried	삼촌
topic particle	는, 은		
train	기차		

uncle	큰아버지 ( <i>father's older brother</i> ), 삼촌 ( <i>unmarried, father's side</i> )	week	주
update	업데이트 ( <i>n.</i> ), 업데이트하다 ( <i>업데이트하-</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> )	weekend	주말
used to	-더니 ( <i>situation in the past</i> )	welcome	어서 오세요
<b>V</b>			
vacation	휴가	well	그런데
vacation, leave for a	휴가내다 ( <i>휴가내-</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> )	well, do	잘하다 ( <i>하-</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> )
vegetables	야채	well, not do	못하다 ( <i>v.</i> )
vegetarian	채식주의자	well, speak	잘하다 ( <i>하-</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> )
very	참	what	뭐
visa	비자	What is ... ?	뭐예요? ( <i>infml./polite</i> )
volleyball	배구	What time ... ?	몇 시 . . . ?
<b>W</b>			
waist	허리	when	언제, -때
wait	기다리다 ( <i>기다리-</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> )	where	어디, -곳
wait a second	잠깐만요	which	무슨, 어느
water	물	white	하얀, 흰
we	저희(들) ( <i>polite</i> ), 우리(들) ( <i>non-polite</i> )	who	누구
wear	입다 ( <i>입-</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> )	whole	전체
website	웹사이트	why	왜요
website update	웹사이트 업데이트	win the game	경기에서 이기다 ( <i>경기에서 이기-</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> )
Wednesday	수요일	window	창문
		wire transfer	송금
		wire transfer document	송금 내역서
		won	원
		( <i>Korean currency</i> )	
		words	말씀 ( <i>hon.</i> )
		work	회사, 일, 일이 되다 ( <i>일이 되-</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> ), 일하다 ( <i>일하-</i> ) ( <i>v.</i> )
		World Cup	월드컵

write      쓰다, 썼다,  
(쓰-, 써-) (*v.*)

**Y**

yeah	응 ( <i>non-polite</i> )
year	년
yellow	노란
yes	네 ( <i>positive answer, fml./polite</i> )
yet	아직도
you	너 ( <i>sing., non-polite</i> ), 사모님 ( <i>sing., polite/hon.</i> ), 선생님 ( <i>sing., polite/hon.</i> ), 너희 ( <i>pl., non-polite</i> ), 여러분 ( <i>pl., fml./polite</i> )
younger sibling	동생
your	너의 ( <i>sing., non-polite</i> ), 네 ( <i>sing., non-polite</i> ), 선생님의 ( <i>sing., polite/hon.</i> ), 너희(들)의 ( <i>pl., non-polite</i> ), 여러분의 ( <i>pl., polite</i> )

**Z**

zero      공 (*S-K number*)



## Glossary

## Korean-English

ㄱ		가능한	possible ( <i>adj.</i> )
가	subject particle	가능해지다	possible, become ( <i>v.</i> )
가 보다	try going ( <i>v.</i> )	가다 (가-)	go ( <i>v.</i> )
가 봐요 ... (가-/보-)	Let's go and see ...	가래가 많이 나와요.	I have phlegm. ( <i>polite</i> )
가겠어요	going, I/we will be ( <i>polite/infml.</i> )	가세요.	Please go. ( <i>polite/infml. command</i> ), Let's go. ( <i>polite/infml. suggestion</i> )
가격	price	가슴	chest
가고 있다	going, am/is/are	가야 겠다.	(I) should go.
가고 있습니다	going, am/is/are ( <i>polite/fml.</i> )	가요.	(I/We/You/She He/They) go/goes.
가고 있어요	going, am/is/are ( <i>polite/infml.</i> )	가장	most, best
가고 있었습니다	going, was/were ( <i>polite/fml.</i> )	가지 마세요.	Don't go.
가고 있었어요	going, was/were ( <i>polite/infml.</i> )	가지고 가다 (가지고 가-)	take and bring ( <i>v.</i> )
가고 있을 거예요	going, he/she/they will be ( <i>polite/infml.</i> )	하지만	although (I) go
가구	furniture	가판대	newsstand
가까운 분들을 초대하자	Let's invite relatives and close friends. ( <i>non- polite</i> )	-간	duration of time, during
가능하다 (가능하-)	possible, be ( <i>v.</i> )	간다!	(I/We/You/He She/They) go/goes (now)!
		갈색	brown

갈색 머리에요.	(She) is brown-haired.	경기에서 대패하다	be completely defeated in a game (v.)
감기에 걸렸어요.	(I) caught a cold.	경기에서 이기다 (경기에서 이기-)	win the game (v.)
감사합니다.	Thank you. (polite/fml.)	경기에서 지다 (경기에서 지-)	lose the game (v.)
감사해요.	Thank you. (polite/infml.)	경우	case
갑자기	suddenly	계란	eggs
값	price	계산서 여기 있습니다.	Here is your check.
값이 비싸질 거예요.	The price will become expensive.	계산해 드리겠습니다.	Let me calculate the total.
강의실이 어디예요?	Where is the lecture room?	계장님	chief clerk
같다	same, be (v.)	계획	plan
같은데요... (같-)	it seems...	고	and (conj.)
같이	together	고고학	archaeology
같이 일하게 될 거예요.	(We) will be working together.	고기	meat
-개	general small object counter	고마워.	Thank you. (non-polite)
거	thing (colloquial)	고마워요.	Thank you. (polite/infml.)
거기	there	고맙습니다. (고맙-)	Thank you. (polite/fml.)
거기 어디예요?	Where am I calling? (lit., Where is there?)	고모	father's sister
거실	living room	고모부	father's sister's husband
건물	building	고쳐 보다 (고치-)	intend to fix (v.)
걸다 (걸-)	hang (v.)	공	zero (S-K number)
검은	black	공부	study (n.)
검은 눈이에요.	(She) has dark eyes.	공부하다	study (v.)
경기	game, match		

공부하세요.	Please study.	그냥 두다	let it (them) be (v.)
공부해요.	(I) am studying.	그들	they (non-polite)
		그래서	therefore, thus
공항 대기실	airport waiting room	그래요.	Yes, let's do so. (statement of agreement)
과장(님)	section chief	그래요?	Is that so?
과학	science	그러는데...	I heard (someone) said...
괜찮아.	It's okay. (non-pol.)	그런데	by the way, well, but (change in topic), however
괜찮아요.	It's all right, I don't mind.	그럼	then
교보 문고	Gyobo bookstore (the largest bookstore in Seoul)	그럼 그렇지!	That's why! (excl., used when your assumption turned out to be right)
교체	replacement (n.)	그렇구나.	I see. (realization)
교환	exchange (n.)	그렇다 (그렇-)	see (v.), realize (v.)
구	nine (S-K number)	-그루	tree counter
구월	September	-그릇	dish counter
국문학	Korean literature	그리고	and
국민	citizens of the nation	그분들	they (polite/hon.)
국수	noodles	그분이	he (polite/hon.), she (polite/hon.)
귀	ear	그의	his
그	that; he (non-polite)	글썬요...	Oh, well...
그분들의	their (polite/hon.)	금연 구역	non-smoking area
그분의	his (polite/hon.), her (polite/hon.)	금요일	Friday
그(녀)가	she (polite)	기다리다 (기다리-)	wait (v.)
그(녀)는	she (polite)	기차	train
그(녀)의	her (polite)	기차역	train station
그거	that thing	기침이 나요.	I have a cough.
그게	that thing (colloquial)		

<b>ㄸ</b>		냄새가 기가 막혀요!	The smell is so wonderful!
까만	black	냅킨	napkin
-까지	to	냉장고	refrigerator
깜빡하다 (깜빡하-)	forget (v.)	너	you (sing., non- polite)
깜빡했네! (깜빡하-)	I completely forgot!	너는 야채를 더 먹어야 겠다.	You should eat more vegetables.
-께	to (someone) (polite/hon.)	너무	too much
꽃가게	flower shop	너무 비싸요.	That's too expensive.
끝나요	finish (v.)	너의	your (sing., non- polite)
<b>ㄹ</b>		너희	you (pl., non- polite)
나	I (non-polite)	너희(들)의	your (pl., non- polite)
나는 국수를 만들어야 겠다.	I should make noodles.	넓어지다 (넓어지-)	become large (v.)
나다 (나-)	generate (v.)	넓히다 (넓히-)	enlarge (v.)
나빠지다	become bad (v.)	네	yes (polite positive answer), your (sing.)
나의	my (non-polite)	네 시	4 o'clock
나이프	knife	넷	four (K-K number)
날	blade (n.), raw (uncooked) food	노란	yellow
날씬해 보여요.	You look thin.	노래하다 (노래하-)	sing (v.)
남기실 메시지 있으세요?	Do you have a message to leave? (Would you like to leave a message?)	노트북 있으세요?	Do you have a notebook?
낫겠니? (낫-)	Will it be better?	놀다 (놀-)	play (v.)
내	my (non-polite)	놀아야 겠-.	(I) should play.
내려요.	Get off.	농구	basketball
내외분	a husband and a wife (polite/hon.)	누구세요?	Who is (calling), please?
내일	tomorrow		
내일 시험이 있어요.	(I) have an exam tomorrow.		

누구시라고 전해드릴까요?	Who should I say called?	단성사	Dan Seong Sa (the oldest theater in Seoul)
누나	older sister (m. speaker)	달	(duration of) month
눈	eye	달걀	eggs
눈병이 났어요.	I got an eye infection.	달콤한	sweet
는	topic particle	닭고기	chicken
늘다 (늘-)	expanded, be (v.)	담당	(be in) charge (of)
늦다 (늦-)	late, be (v.)	당근	carrot
늦지 마세요.	Don't be late.	대박	blowout
-(으)니	since	-대요	I heard that . . . (reported speech)
-(으)니까	because	대표적	representative
<b>ㄷ</b>		대학 동창	classmates
다니다 (다니-)	attend (v.)	대학원 생활	graduate school life
다른	different	대한 항공	Korean Airlines
다른 사이즈 있어요?	Do you have another size?	댄스 수업	dance class
다른 색 있어요?	Do you have another color?	더	more
다리	leg	더 맛있어요!	More delicious!
다섯	five (K-K number)	-더니	used to (situation in the past)
다섯 시	5 o'clock	덩치가 커요.	(You) have large build.
다시	again	데이트	date
다음에 봐요!	See you later! (polite/infml.)	데이트 하고 있어요.	(I) am dating.
단결	unity	도	also (post.)
단결된	united	-도	island, also
단결하다 (단결하-)	united, be (v.)	도서관	library
단돈	only this much money	도착 시간이 지연되었습니다.	The arrival is going to be delayed.

도착하다 (도착하-)	arrive (v.)	들었어요.	I heard it.
독감인 것 같아요.	I seem to have a flu.	등	etc.
돌다 (돌-)	turn (v.)	ㄷ	
-동	building number (address of a building), number of building (counter)	따라오다 (따라오-)	follow (v.)
동생	younger sibling	땀이 많이 나요.	I sweat too much.
돼지고기	pork	-때	when, time
되다 (되-)	become (v.)	땡큐.	Thank you. (colloquial; from English)
두 벌 주세요.	Give me two (garments). (I'll take two garments.)	떠나다 (떠나-)	leave (v.)
두 시	2 o'clock	또 봐요!	See you again! (infml./polite)
두통	headache	똥똥해요.	He/She is chubby.
두통이 심해요.	I have a severe headache.	뜨거운	hot
둘	two (K-K number)	뜨겁습니다.	It is hot.
드리다	give (to someone else) (v.)	-ㄹ 수 있-	to be able to
드릴 (드리-)	will give (to someone)	란	it means, it is
드롭니다	It is rare.	렌트카	rental car
드세요...	Please eat...	로	by means of
드셨습니까?	Did you eat? (polite/fml./hon.)	로서	as
듣다 (듣-)	listen (v.), hear (v.)	리모델링	remodeling
들다 (듣-)	hear (v.)	리모델링하다 (리모델링하-)	remodel (v.)
들다	eat (v.)	ㄹ	
들어 와.	Come on in. (non- polite)	마다	every-
들어오다 (들어오-)	enter (v.)	-마리	animal counter
		마셔요...	Please drink...
		마시다 (마시-)	drink (v.)

마지막	last	매일	every day
마찬가지로	as well as	매주	every week
마흔	forty (K-K number)	맵다 (맵-)	spicy, be (v., irregular)
만원입니다.	It's 10,000 won. (polite/fml.)	맵지 않지요?	Isn't it spicy? (rhetorical question)
많아요 (많-)	it's a lot, a lot of	맵지만...	Although (it is) spicy...
많이 배우겠습니다.	I will learn a lot. (polite/fml.)	머리	head
말랐어요	skinny	머리 긴 분	person with long hair
말썽이다 (말썽이-)	trouble (v.)	머리가 길어요.	She has long hair.
말썽이에요.	It is troublesome.	머리가 어지러워요.	I have dizziness.
말씀	saying, words (n.) (polite/hon.)	머리가 짧아요.	She has short hair.
말씀드려보- 겠어요.	I will try to ask. (polite/fml./hon.)	먹고 있다	eating, am/is/are
말씀드리다 (말씀드리-)	tell (v.), ask (v.) (polite/hon.)	먹는다	I am eating (now)!
말하다 (말하-)	speak (v.), ask (v.)	먹다 (먹-)	eat (v.)
맛 좋은	delicious, savory	먹어 보다	try eating (v.)
맛이 좀 짠 것 같아요.	It tastes a little bit salty.	먹어요	Please eat; I am eating.
맛있는	delicious	먹지만...	Although (I) eat...
맛있지만	delicious, although (it is)	멋있어요!	You look cool!
맞겠는데요.	It may fit.	멕시코	Mexico
맞아요	it's right (agreement)	-면	if
매년	every year	-명	person counter
매운	hot, spicy	몇 번에 거셨어요?	What number did you call?
매운 (맵-)	spicy, be (v., irregular)	몇 시...?	What time...?
매월	every month	모든	all
매일	every day	모습	looks
		모였습니다.	(Everyone) got together.
		목요일	Thursday

못	cannot	ㅂ	
못 생겼어요.	(He/She) is bad-looking.	바랍니다...	I hope... (v., polite/fml./hon.)
못하다	not well, do/be (v.)	바로	right away, soon
무료	free	바빠요.	I am busy.
무슨	which	바쁘다 (바쁘-)	busy, be (v.)
무슨 운동을 좋아하나요?	What kind of sports do they like? (lit., did you hear what sports they like?)	바지	pants
물	water	받아 보다	try receiving
물 마시지 마세요.	Don't drink water.	받아라. (받-)	(You) receive it. (non-polite)
물 좀 주세요.	Could you give me some water?	발	foot
물론이-	of course	발권대	ticket issuing desk
물론이죠!	Of course!	발목을 삐었어요.	I sprained my ankle.
물만 마시세요.	Drink only water.	발코니	balcony
물어보다	ask (v.)	밤	night
뭐	what	밤 (일, 잠)	night (work, sleep)
뭐 하세요?	What are you doing? (polite/ infml.)	밥	cooked rice
뭐가 좋겠니?	What would be good? (non-polite)	밥 먹어요.	(I) eat a meal.
뭐니...?	What is...? (non- polite)	방	bedroom, room
뭘 도와 드릴까요?	How can I help you?	배	stomach, boat
미국	U.S.	배가 너무 불러요, 감사합니다.	I am well stuffed, thank you.
미식 축구	American football	배가 아파요.	I have a stomachache.
민족	ethnicity	배구	volleyball
맛맛한	flat	배달	delivery
		배달을 해요.	(I) make deliveries.
		배우겠습니다.	(I) will learn. (polite/fml.)

배우다 (배우-)	learn (v.)	뵙고 싶은데요 (뵙-)	I'd like to see/ meet... (polite/ infml.)
배웠어요.	(I) learned.	뵙다 (뵙-)	see (v.), meet (v.)
백	one hundred (S-K number)	부럽다 (부럽-)	be envious/ jealous (v.)
버스	bus	부럽다!	(I'm) jealous!
버스 정류장	bus stop	부엌	kitchen
버스 터미널	bus station, bus terminal	부장님	department head
-번씩	each (used with a number)	-부터	from
-벌	garment counter	-분	(hon.) noun counter for persons
별 거 아니예요.	It's nothing.	분홍색	pink
별 말씀을요.	You don't need to say that.	불고기	bulgogi (Korean BBQ)
병원	hospital	불문학	French literature
보내다 (보내-)	send (v.)	붉은	red
보낸	sent (adj.)	붉은 악마	Red Devils
보다 (보-)	look (v.)	브로컬리	broccoli
보라	purple	비빔밥	bibimbap (rice bowl mixed with other food contents)
보여주- 었습니다.	(I) have shown (him). (polite/fml.)	비싸지다 (비싸지-)	become expensive (v.)
보이-	seen, looked, seemed	비자	visa
보이세요...? (보이-)	Can you see...? (polite/infml.)	비행기	airplane, flight
보통 체격이에요.	(He) is of medium build.	비행기 시간이 언제예요?	When is the flight?
볼까요? (보-)	Shall we see?	비행기 연착했습니다.	The flight is delayed.
볼게요. (보-)	I will take a look.	비행기표	plane ticket
뵙고 싶-	I'd like to see... (non-polite)	비행기표 예약했어요.	I reserved the ticket.
		빨간	red

빨리 가요!	Let's go quickly!	상담하다 (상담하-)	consult (v.)
빵	bread		
삐	beep	상담하면 왜요?	Should I consult . . . ?
人		새 한복	new hanbok (traditional Korean dress)
사	four (S-K number)	색깔	color
사람	person	색깔이 잘 어울려요.	The color suits you well.
사람들	people	색깔이 참 좋아요!	The color is great! (It's a really nice color.)
사랑	love	생각	thought
사모님	you (f. sing, polite/hon.)	생각보다...	. . . is harder than I thought.
사무실	office	어려워요. (어렵-)	
사세요	please buy.	생물학	biology
사시면	if you buy . . .	생선	fish
사십	forty (S-K number)	생신	birthday (hon.)
사월	April	생일	birthday (for younger people)
사촌	cousin {father's side}	생활	lifestyle
사촌들	cousins	샤워해요.	(I) am showering.
사회학	sociology	서류	document
-살	age counter	서른	thirty (K-K number)
살살	slowly, gradually, slightly	서치	search
살이 찌서 (살이 찌-)	because (it is) fattening	서치 엔진 뭐 쓰세요?	Which search engine do you use?
삼	three (S-K number)	선물	gift
삼십	thirty (S-K number)	선생님	you (sing., polite)
삼월	March	선생님의	your (sing., polite)
삼촌	unmarried uncle (father's side)	설사가 나요.	I have diarrhea.
-상	on	설익은	raw

설탕 줘 주세요.	Could you pass (give) me some sugar?	수학	mathematics
성함	name	숙모	uncle's wife (father's side)
성함과 전화번호	name and phone number	숙제가 너무 많아!	There is so much homework!
성함이 ... 세요?	Is your name . . . ? (polite/fml.)	숟가락	spoon
세 벌 주세요.	Give me three (garments). (I'll take three garments.)	췌	fifty (K-K number)
세 시	3 o'clock	스물	twenty (K-K number)
세계적	worldly	스키	skiing
세관	customs	-습니까	polite formal question ending
-세요	polite positive command ending	-습니다	polite formal ending
세일	sale	시금치	spinach
세일 가격이에요.	It's the sale price.	시내	city, downtown
셋	three (K-K number)	시월	October
셔츠	shirt	시작했어요.	(I) started. (infml./ polite)
소고기	beef	시장	market
소금 줘 주세요.	Could you pass (give) me some salt?	시장ব্যয়.	(I) go to grocery shopping.
소리	sound	시청역	city hall station
소파	sofa	시큼한	sour
손	hand	식중독	food poisoning
송금	wire transfer	식탁	dining table
송금 내역서	wire transfer document	신발장	shoe closet
수업에 가요.	(I) go to class.	신선하지 않은	stale
수영	swimming	신선한	fresh
수요일	Wednesday	신입사원	new recruit
		실은	in fact, actually
		실제로	actually
		심장	heart



심한 두통	severe headache	-아야 겠어요	should (do something) (v.)
십	ten (S-K number)		
십사	fourteen (S-K number)	-아야 돼요	have to (do something) (v.)
십삼	thirteen (S-K number)	-아요	polite familiar ending
십이	twelve (S-K number)	아이들	children
십이월	December	아직도	yet
십일	eleven (S-K number)	아침	morning, breakfast
십일월	November	아침 일찍	early in the morning
싸우다 (싸우-)	to fight (v.), compete (v.)	아파지다	sick, become (v.)
써다 (쓰-)	to write (v.)	아프다 (아프-)	sick, be (v.)
썩은	rotten	아프세요?	(Are you) sick?
쓴	bitter	아프지 마세요.	Don't be sick.
-씨	Mr., Mrs., Ms. (fml./polite honorific)	아픔	hurting
		아홉	nine (K-K number)
<b>아</b>		아홉 시	9 o'clock
		안	not, none
아	non-polite familiar ending	안 돼요?	It doesn't work?
-아 보다	try (doing something) (v.)	안 되다 (안 되-)	not work (v.)
아니요	not at all	안내대거	Where is the
아랫배	lower stomach	어디 있어요?	information desk?
아랫배가 살살 아파요.	My lower stomach is slowly getting upset.	안내소	information desk
아무	any (used in negative expression)	안녕?	Hi. (non-polite)
아버지	father	안녕하세요?	How are you? (polite/infml.)
아시아나 항공	Asiana Airlines	안녕하십니까?	How are you? (polite/fml.)
		안녕히 가세요!	Good-bye! (polite/infml.)

안녕히 가십시오!	Good-bye! (polite/fml.)	어때요?	How is/are...?
안방을 좀 넓히고	enlarge the master bedroom	어떤	some
앉다 (앉-)	sit (v.)	어떨까?	What about...? (non-polite)
알겠습니다 (알-)	I got you, know, see (v.) (polite fml.)	어떨까? (어떨-)	How about...? (non-polite)
앞	in front of	어떻게 오셨어요?	What brought you here? (polite/fml.)
야구	baseball	어떻게 지내요?	How are you spending time? (polite/infml.)
야채	vegetables	어떻게 해...?	How will you...? (non-polite)
야채 비빔밥	vegetable bibimbap	어떻게 해요?	What should (we) do? (polite/infml.)
약	medicine	어떻다	be how (v.)
약속	appointment	어려워지다	difficult, become (v.)
양념 맛이 강한	strongly-spiced	어렵다 (어렵-)	difficult, be (v.)
양파	onion	어머니	mother
<b>어</b>		어서 오세요!	Come on in!, Welcome! (polite/infml.)
어	non-polite familiar ending	어서 와!	Come on in! (non-polite)
-어 보-	try (doing something) (v.)	-어야 겠어요	should (do something) (v. ending, polite/infml.)
어느	which	-어야 돼요	have to (do something) (v. ending, polite/infml.)
어디	where		
어디 가세요?	Where are you going? (polite/infml.)		
어디가 아프세요?	Where are you sick? (What?) (polite/infml.)		
어디서 ... 하는게 좋을까요?	Where would be good to...? (polite/infml.)	-어요	be, do, have something (polite familiar ending)
어디에서	from where	어울려요	It goes well. (v., of clothes)

어울리다	fit (v.)	에서요	from
어제	yesterday	엑셀	Excel (computer program)
어제 밤	last night	엔진	engine
어제 접속했어요?	Did you connect to the Internet (chat room) yesterday?	여	female
어휴, 참!	Argggh! (an exclamation for when you confront something absurd or outrageous)	여객선	ferry
언니	older sister (for a female speaker)	여권	passport
언제 되지요? (되-)	When is it possible?	여기	here
얼굴	face	여기 싸인 좀 해 주세요.	Please sign here.
좋아졌네!	You look good! (lit., Your face got better.)	여기 인사해.	Here, greet (meet) my friend.
얼마나	how much	여기 있네요 (있-)	here it is (polite/infml.)
얼마나 드릴까요?	How much would you like?	여기 있습니다.	Here you are. (handing something to someone)
얼마예요?	How much is this?	여기 주소 좀 적어 주세요.	Please write your address here.
업데이트	update	여기예요.	Here I am.
업데이트하다 (업데이트하-)	update (v.)	연한	tender
업체	business, company	여덟	eight (K-K number)
없애다 (없애-)	get rid of (v.)	여덟 시	8 o'clock
여		여덟시 반	eight thirty
-에게	to (someone)	여러	various
-에게	to (someone) (literary form)	여러분	you (pl., polite)
		여러분의	your (pl., polite)
		여름	summer
		여보세요	hello, Hello? (on the phone)
		여섯	six (K-K number)
		여섯 시	6 o'clock

여섯 시간마다 한번 씩 드세요.	Take (this) every six hours.	영어를 하세요?	Do you speak English? (polite/infml.)
여행	trip	영어하다 (영어하-)	speak English (v.)
여행 가방	suitcase	영화 관	movie theater
역사학	history	옆	next
연구실	laboratory	<b>예</b>	
열	ten (K-K number); fever	예금 통장	checking account
열 두 시	12 o'clock	예뻐요!	(She is) pretty! (compliment about a woman)
열 시	10 o'clock	예쁜 (예쁘-)	pretty, be (v.)
열 한 시	11 o'clock	예순	sixty (K-K number)
열넷	fourteen (K-K number)	예약	reservation
열둘	twelve (K-K number)	예약되었습니다. (예약되-)	You're reserved (for an appointment). (polite/fml.)
열셋	thirteen (K-K number)	예약하다 (예약하-)	to reserve
열심히	diligently	예약하시겠어요?	Would you like an appointment? (polite/fml.)
열이 많이 나요.	I have a high fever.	예약해 보다	try reserving
열정	passion, enthusiasm	<b>오</b>	
열하나	eleven (K-K number)	오	five (S-K number)
영문학	English literature	오늘	today
영어	English	오늘 아침	this morning
영어 하네?	Do you speak English? (non-polite)	오늘 오후	this afternoon
영어 하시는 분 있어요?	Is there anybody who speaks English? (polite/infml./hon.)	오다 (오-)	come (v.)
		오디오	audio set, stereo set

오래간만이네요.	It's been a long time. ( <i>polite/infml.</i> )	왜요?	Why?
오래간만이다!	Long time no see!	외-	affix for maternal side relatives
(이-)	( <i>non-polite</i> )	외사촌	cousin ( <i>mother's side</i> )
오래간만입니다.	It's been a long time. ( <i>polite/fml.</i> )	외삼촌	unmarried uncle ( <i>mother's side</i> )
오른쪽	right side	외숙모	uncle's wife ( <i>mother's side</i> )
오른쪽에	on the right	외할머니	grandmother ( <i>mother's side</i> )
오른쪽으로	to the right	외할아버지	grandfather ( <i>mother's side</i> )
오름	raised	왼쪽	left, left side
오빠	older brother ( <i>f. speaker</i> )	<b>요</b>	
오십	fifty ( <i>S-K number</i> )	-요	short form ending
오월	May	요리를 아주 잘 하시는데요!	Your cooking skills are excellent!
오전	a.m.	요리하다 (요리하-)	cook ( <i>v.</i> )
오형	Mr. Oh ( <i>older friend, m. speaker</i> )	요리해요.	(I) cook.
옥색	jade	요즘	lately, these days
올 봄	this spring	요즘 어때요?	How are you these days?
올려주세요...	Please upload...	요즘 재미있어요.	I'm having fun these days.
올케	sister-in-law ( <i>f. speaker, of brother's wife</i> )	요즘 좋아요.	I'm doing fine these days.
올케 언니	sister-in-law ( <i>f. speaker, of older brother's wife</i> )	요즘 힘들어요.	I'm having a hard time these days.
옷가게	clothing store	욕조	bath tub
와요 (오-)	come, coming	용건	content, message, subject (of conversation)
왔어 (오-)	came ( <i>non-polite</i> )		
왕복	round trip		
왕복표	roundtrip ticket		
왜 그럴까. (그렇-)	I wonder why.		
왜소해.	(She) is petite.		

<b>우</b>		<b>으</b>	
우리(들)	we ( <i>pl.</i> )	은	topic particle
우리(들)의	our ( <i>pl.</i> )	은지 좀 바꿔주세요.	Can I speak to Eunji? (Bring Eunji to the phone.) ( <i>polite/infml.</i> )
우선	first of all	은지하고 통화 좀 할 수 있을까요?	Could I speak to Eunji please? ( <i>polite/fml.</i> )
우승하다-	to win the championship ( <i>v.</i> )	은행	bank
우유	milk	은행에 가요.	(I) go to a bank.
운동	exercise ( <i>n.</i> )	은행원	teller
운동하고 있다.	(I am) exercising.	음료수	drinks
운동하다 (운동하-)	exercise ( <i>v.</i> )	음성사서함에 메시지를 남기세요.	Leave a voice mail.
운동한다	Exercise (now)!	음식	food
운동해요.	Let's exercise; I am exercising.	음식이 아주 맛있어요!	The food is very delicious!
운전 면허증	driver's license	음악	music
워드 프로그램	Word program	응	yeah ( <i>non-polite</i> )
원	won (Korean currency)	응원	cheer
원래	originally	응원력	power of cheering
원하시는	wanted	<b>의</b>	
월드컵	World Cup	의료 보험증	medical insurance card
월요일	Monday	의사 선생님	doctor
웹사이트	website	의자	chair
웹사이트 만들었어요.	I designed my website.	의지	will, volition
웹사이트 업데이트	website update	의학	medical studies
<b>유</b>			
유람선	cruise		
유월	June		
육	six ( <i>S-K number</i> )		
육 개월 동안	for six months		

이		-이지	non-polite ending, giving a background
이	this; tooth, teeth; two (S-K number)	이후로	after
-이	subject particle	인기	popularity
이 입금표 좀 써 주세요.	Please fill in the deposit slip.	인기가 없대요.	I heard that it is not popular.
이 전화번호 맞아요?	Is this phone number correct?	인기가 있-	to be popular
이거	this thing	일	one (S-K number); work, job
이거 정말 안 되겠는데.	It can't be. (an expression said to yourself about something troublesome)	일곱	seven (K-K number)
이다	be (v.)	일곱 시	7 o'clock
이런	this kind	일어나요.	(I) get up.
이런	this type	일요일	Sunday
이리 오세요.	Come this way.	일월	January
이메일 보내주세요.	Send me an e-mail, please.	일찍	early
-이면	if	일하게 될 (일하-, 되-)	will work with (us)
이모	mother's sister	일하다 (일하-)	work (v.)
이모부	mother's sister's husband	일해?	(Do you) work? (non-polite)
이번 학기에 좀 바빠요.	I am a bit busy this semester.	일해야 겠다.	(I) should work.
이상하다 (이상하-)	strange, be (v.)	일해요.	I am working.
이상해요.	It's strange.	입구	entrance
이상해지다 (v.)	strange, become (v.)	입금	deposit
이십	twenty (S-K number)	입금 좀 하려고요.	I'd like to make a deposit, please.
이월	February	입금표	deposit slip
이제 곧 방학이에요.	Soon it'll be a vacation.	입다 (입-)	wear (v.)
		있다 (있-)	be (v.), exist (v.), have (v.)

있다면 ...	I heard that you had ...	잘 하는데 뭐.	I think you do it well. (conventional non-polite expression between friends)
있어요 ...	there is/there are ...	잘 하시는데요.	You're doing well. (polite/infml.)
ㅈ		잘못 거셨습니다.	You dialed a wrong number. (polite/fml.)
자기들	themselves	잘하다 (하-)	well, do (v.); well, speak (v.); well, play (v.)
자다 (자-)	sleep (v.)	잠깐만	wait a second (v.); wait a second (non-polite)
-자루	pencils counter	잠깐만요.	Please hold on a second. (polite/infml.)
작아지다 (작아지-)	smaller, become (v.)	잠자요.	Let's sleep; I am sleeping.
작은 방	small (bed)room	재미있다 (재미있-)	interesting, be (v.)
작은 사이즈	small size	재미있어요.	It's interesting. (v.)
작은 사이즈 있어요?	Do you have a smaller size?	재미있어지다 (재미있어지-)	funny, become (v.)
-잔	glass counter, cup counter	저	that over there; I (polite/hon.)
잔돈 있으세요?	Do you have any change?	저거	that thing over there
자동차	automobile	저금 통장	savings account
잘 가!	Good-bye! (infml./non-polite)	저기	there, over there
잘 먹었습니다!	The food was great! (polite/fml.)	저녁	evening, dinner
잘 생겼어요!	(He is) good looking! (compliment about a man)	저는 컴퓨터는 많이 몰라요.	I don't know a lot about computers.
잘 어울려요.	It fits you well.	저를 따라 오세요.	Follow me, please.
잘 어울리다 (어울리-)	fit well (v.)	저의	my (polite)
잘 지냈어? (지내-)	Have you been doing well? (polite/infml.)		
잘 지냈지. (지내-)	I have been doing well. (non-polite)		

저희(들)	we ( <i>polite</i> )	제일	first, most, best
저희(들)(의)	our ( <i>polite</i> )	제주도	Jeju Island
전공	major	조깅하다 (조깅하-)	jog ( <i>v.</i> )
전공이 뭐예요?	What is your major?	조심해서 가세요!	Good-bye! ( <i>polite/infml.</i> )
전자공학	electronics engineering	존재하는	existing
전체	whole	좀	a little, a bit
전화 번호가 어떻게 됩니까?	What is your phone number?	좀 더 주세요.	Please give me some more. ( <i>polite/infml.</i> )
전화 왔습니다.	You have a phone call. ( <i>lit.</i> , The phone call came.)	좀 봐 주세요.	Please take a look at it; Please help me.
전화를 걸어 (걸-)	make a phone call ( <i>non-polite</i> )	좀 싸게 해 주세요.	A little bit of a discount, please.
전화번호	phone number	좀 이상해요. (이상하-)	It's a bit strange.
절대 안정	absolute rest	종로 3가	Jongro 3 ga (central business area of Seoul)
절대 안정하세요.	You must rest completely.	좋-	good, nice, okay, positive
점심	lunch	좋겠니? (좋-)	Would it be good? ( <i>non-polite</i> )
점심시간	lunchtime, lunch	좋다 (좋-)	good, be ( <i>v.</i> )
젓가락	chopsticks	좋아 보이다 (좋아 보이-)	look good ( <i>v.</i> )
정말	really	좋아지다	get better ( <i>v.</i> )
정말 말썹이에요.	It's really a headache.	좋아지다 (좋아지-)	get better ( <i>v.</i> ); become good ( <i>v.</i> )
정문	front gate	좋은	good
정보	information	좋은 생각	good idea
정보과학	information science	좋은 생각이 있어요!	I have a good idea! ( <i>polite infml.</i> )
정신이 없어요.	I am mindless.	좋은 생각이네!	Good idea! ( <i>non- polite</i> )
제	my ( <i>polite</i> )		
제 대학 동창이에요.	(He) is my college friend.		
제공하다	provide ( <i>v.</i> )		

좋은 하루 되세요!	Have a nice day! ( <i>idiom</i> )	짭짭한	salty
좋을까요?	Will it be good to...?	-쯤	about ( <i>amount</i> ), approximately
주다 (주-)	give ( <i>v.</i> )	춧	
주말	weekend	차	car
주민 등록증	citizen's registration card (ID)	찬 물 있어요?	Do you have cold/ ice water?
주민등록증 좀 주세요.	Please give me your ID.	차	car
주소	address	참	very
주중에	during weekdays	창고	storage
주홍	red	창문	window
준비	preparation	찾는	finding
중	amongst, among	-채	house counter
즐거운 여행되세요!	Bon voyage!	채식주의자	vegetarian
증상	symptoms	책상	desk
-지 마세요	don't ( <i>negative command marker</i> )	책장	bookshelf
지금은 통화 중이신데요.	(She/He) is on the phone now.	처럼	as
지난	last, past	처음	first time
지내다 (지내-)	spend time ( <i>v.</i> )	천	one thousand ( <i>S-K number</i> )
질긴	stringy	천만예요.	Not at all.
-지만	although	청바지	blue pants, jeans
-지요?	... isn't it? ... doesn't it? ( <i>tag question</i> )	청소하다 (청소하-)	clean ( <i>v.</i> )
지하철	subway	체하다 (체하-)	stomachache, have a ( <i>v.</i> )
진료	diagnosis	체한 것 같아요.	I seem to have a stomachache.
집	house	초대하다 (초대하-)	invite ( <i>v.</i> )
집에 가요.	(I) go home.	초대하자...	Let's invite...
		축구	soccer
		축구 경기	soccer match



축구장	soccer field	큰 것 (크-)	big thing
출발하다 (출발하-)	depart (v.)	큰 사이즈 있어요?	Do you have a bigger size?
친-	affix for paternal side relatives	큰아버지	older uncle (father's older brother)
친구	friend	큰어머니	older aunt (father's older brother's wife)
친구를 만나요. (I) meet a friend.		키가 작아요	short (person's height)
친척들	relatives	키가 커요	tall (person's height)
칠	seven (S-K number)	키가 큰 분	tall person (polite hon.)
칠월	July	킹콩	King Kong
침대	bed	<b>E</b>	
침실	bedroom	타다 (타-)	ride (v.), get on (v.)
<b>ㅋ</b>		탑승시간	boarding time
칼	knife	테니스	tennis
커서가 안 움직여요.	My cursor is not moving.	토요일	Saturday
커피	coffee	토할 것 같아요.	I am about to vomit.
커피숍	coffee shop	통장	account, bankbook
컴퓨터 공학	computer engineering	통해	through
컴퓨터 끄세요.	Turn off the computer, please.	통해서	through
컴퓨터 잘 하세요?	Are you good with computers?	퇴근이에요.	I get off work.
컴퓨터가 고장났어요.	My computer is out of order.	튀김	tempura (battered fried food)
콜라	cola	팀장	team leader
크리스 씨세요?	Are you Mr. Chris?	<b>ㅍ</b>	
크리스가 그러는데...	Chris said that...	파	green onion
크면서 (크-)	as (they) grow up, as (they) get bigger		

파격적	shocking, explosive	하다 (하-)	do (v.)
파란	green, blue (occasionally)	-하면	if
파란 눈이에요.	(She has) blue eyes.	하세요 (하-)	(He) is doing...
팔	arm	하얀	white
팔	eight (S-K number)	하키	hockey
팔월	August	학교	school
팩스	fax	한 벌	one pair (noun counter for clothes)
팬	fan	한 벌 주세요.	One pair, please.
편도표	one-way ticket	한 시	1 o'clock
편리하게	conveniently	한국어	Korean
포크	fork	한국어 하세요?	Do you speak Korean?
표	ticket	한복	hanbok, traditional Korean dress
푸른	blue, green (occasionally)	-한테	to (someone)
품목	item(s)	-한테	to (someone) (spoken form)
풍미있는	full-tasting	할머니	grandmother (paternal)
프로 축구	professional soccer	할아버지	grandfather (maternal)
프로그래머	programmer	함	reported, said
프로그램	program	항공	airline
프린터가 안 돼요.	My printer is not working.	해물파전	seafood-scallion pancake
피디에프 파일	PDF file	해요 (하-)	do, does (v.)
필요하 (필요하-)	need (v.)	핸드폰 번호 있으세요?	Do you have a cell phone number?
핑크	pink	허리	waist, back
<b>ㅎ</b>		허리가 아파요.	I have back pain.
-하고	and (between nouns)	현재	currently
하나	one (K-K number)		



형	older brother ( <i>of a male</i> )
호텔	hotel
혹시	maybe
화면 보세요.	Look at the screen, please.
화요일	Tuesday
화장대	bureau
화장실	bathroom
화장실은 괜찮아.	The bathroom is okay.
화학	chemistry
회	sashimi
회사	company, work
후식	dessert
후추 좀 주세요.	Could you pass (give) me some black pepper?
휴가	vacation
휴가 낼 수 있어요?	Can you ask for a vacation?
휴가내다 (휴가내-)	vacation, leave for a (v.)
흰	white